

Formula

italiano

2

Nadia Civa

Miriam Rawson

Amelia Short

Joseph Millimaci

PEARSON



Formula

italiano

2

Nadia Civa

Miriam Rawson

Amelia Short

Joseph Millimaci



ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON



Formula

italiano



Nadia Civa

Miriam Rawson

Amelia Short

Joseph Millimaci



Pearson Australia

(a division of Pearson Australia Group Pty Ltd)
707 Collins Street, Melbourne, Victoria 3008
PO Box 23360, Melbourne, Victoria 8012
www.pearson.com.au

Copyright © Pearson Australia 2010
(a division of Pearson Australia Group Pty Ltd)
First published 2010 by Pearson Australia
2017 2016 2015
10 9 8 7 6

Reproduction and communication for educational purposes

The Australian *Copyright Act 1968* (the Act) allows a maximum of one chapter or 10% of the pages of this work, whichever is the greater, to be reproduced and/or communicated by any educational institution for its educational purposes provided that that educational institution (or the body that administers it) has given a remuneration notice to Copyright Agency Limited (CAL) under the Act. For details of the CAL licence for educational institutions contact Copyright Agency Limited (www.copyright.com.au).

Reproduction and communication for other purposes

Except as permitted under the Act (for example any fair dealing for the purposes of study, research, criticism or review), no part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, communicated or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission. All enquiries should be made to the publisher at the address above.

This book is not to be treated as a blackline master; that is, any photocopying beyond fair dealing requires prior written permission.

Publisher: Ada Lanzaro

Editor: Daniela Russo

Cover designer: Miranda Costa

Text designers: Miranda Costa and Paul Ryan

Copyright & Pictures Editor: Michelle Jellett

Project Editor: Carlie Jennings

Development Editor: Sonia Davoine

Language Consultant: Eleonora Pessina

Proofreader: Carolyn Glascodine

Production Controller: Claire Henry

Cover art: Shutterstock

Illustrators: James Hart, Marty Schneider, Colby Heppell and Bruce Rankin

Printed in Australia by the SOS Print + Media Group



National Library of Australia Cataloguing-in-Publication entry

Formula italiano 2 student book / Nadia Civa ... [et al.].
ISBN 978 0 7339 9216 2 (pbk.)
For secondary school age.
Italian language--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English.
Civa, Nadia.
458.2421

Pearson Australia Group Pty Ltd ABN 40 004 245 943

Acknowledgements

We would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce copyright material.

The following abbreviations are used in this list: t = top, b = bottom, l = left, r = right, c = centre.

AAP: p. 67.

Alamy Ltd: pp. 23, 30, 41, 42t, 62br, 77b, 79 (bus stop and pastry shop), 80l, 82bl, 83t, 84, 85, 86l, 86c, 86r, 102r, 102c, 138t, 158, 173t, 177.

Civa, Nadia: pp. 120tl, 120ct, 120cb, 120br, 127 (Colosseum), 133br, 133bl, 138b, 143, 155, 161b.

Corbis Australia Pty Ltd: pp. 1, 37r, 47, 97bl, 144, 174b, 175tl, 178tl.

Dreamstime: pp. 5, 29t, 29b, 41 (weather icons), 44b, 50, 101 (perfume, CD, necklace, wallet, chocolates and camera), 105b, 129, 127 (dice).

Getty Images: pp. 27l, 27r, 37l, 48l, 48r, 97br, 101 (vase), 104b, 105t, 178bl.

iStockphoto: p. 33.

Lancaster, Kate: pp. 79 (church), 120tr, 111l, 115b, 172b.

Pearson Australia: Ada Lanzaro, pp. 12, 44t, 79 (pharmacy, ATM, supermarket, post office and hotel), 102l, 103, 161t; Alice McBroom, p. 104t.

Photolibary Pty Ltd: pp. 111r, 156b, 165, 172t.

Picture Desk, The: pp. 173b, 174t, 175tr.

Shutterstock: pp. 7, 19, 34, 42b, 55, 61, 62tl, 62cl, 66l, 66tr, 66br, 68b, 71t, 71c, 71b, 73, 77c, 77t, 78, 79 (pizza, station, statue, ice-cream and hospital), 83c, 91 (models and motorbike), 97tr, 101 (watch, books, mask, MP3 player and tickets), 104c, 114, 115t, 120bl, 122t, 122c, 122b, 133t, 133c, 142, 147, 156t, 157t, 157b, 176t, 176b, 178br.

Every effort has been made to trace and acknowledge copyright. The publisher would welcome any information from people who believe they own copyright to material in this book.

Disclaimer

The selection of Internet addresses (URLs) provided for this book was valid at the time of publication and was chosen as being appropriate for use as a secondary education research tool. However, due to the dynamic nature of the Internet, some addresses may have changed, may have ceased to exist since publication, or may inadvertently link to sites with content that could be considered offensive or inappropriate. While the authors and publisher regret any inconvenience this may cause readers, no responsibility for any such changes or unforeseeable errors can be accepted by either the authors or the publisher.

Contents

Series features	vi
How to use this book	viii
Map of Italy	x

1

Pronto! Chi parla? 1

You will learn how to:

- talk to people on the telephone
- use the verb **dovere**
- ask for and tell the time
- talk about your daily schedule using reflexive verbs
- identify computer and Internet terminology
- give orders and commands using **l'imperativo**.

2

Mamma mia! Quanti messaggi! 19

You will learn how to:

- use some common Italian expressions
- identify Italian film genres
- talk about your favourite things using the adjective **preferito/a**
- use the various forms of the adjective **quello**
- use the irregular verbs **dire**, **venire** and **uscire**
- use the prepositions **da**, **di**, **in**, **a**, **con** and **per**
- write emails and text messages in Italian.

3

Volete ascoltare la musica? 37

You will learn how to:

- talk about the weather
- ask for and give the date
- use the verbs **potere** and **volere**
- offer, accept and decline invitations
- talk about music and use the verb **suonare**
- use conjunctions and interrogatives to make you sound more fluent.

4

Salviamo la terra!

55

- You will learn how to:
- use the verbs **sapere**, **conoscere**, **dare** and **preferire**
- talk about the environment and ecotourism
- compare different things, qualities and actions
- use articulated prepositions
- identify and discuss extreme sports
- use Italian gestures as linguistic short cuts.

5

In giro per Venezia

73

- You will learn how to:
- buy a Venetian water-bus ticket
 - identify some significant aspects, events and people associated with **Venezia**
 - understand, ask for and give directions
 - identify key places on a map
 - use the singular familiar (**tu**), singular formal (**Lei**) and plural (**voi**) of **l'imperativo negativo**
 - order and buy some food
 - express likes and dislikes for food.

6

Made in Italy: i prodotti italiani

91

- You will learn how to:
- describe things and people using the superlative
 - say 'some/any' using the partitive **di**
 - use Italian words and phrases to shop for presents
 - recognise Italian shops and products
 - use numbers greater than 100
 - avoid repetitions by using direct object pronouns.

7

Il mare e la montagna: la geografia d'Italia

111

- You will learn how to:
- talk about past events and experiences using the past tense (**il passato prossimo**)
 - use **essere** with certain verbs to form **il passato prossimo**
 - recognise Italian geographical features
 - use adverbs to express how and how often you do activities
 - understand what dialects are and why they exist in Italy.

8

Firenze: la città d'arte

129

You will learn how to:

- recognise the significance of **Firenze** and the cultural revolution of the Renaissance
- express **il passato prossimo** with reflexive verbs
- use **avere** to form **il passato prossimo**
- use irregular past participles
- identify three important Italian personalities—Leonardo da Vinci, Dante Alighieri and Galileo Galilei.

9

Cosa facevano gli antichi romani?

147

You will learn how to:

- form and use the imperfect tense (**l'imperfetto**) to describe the past
- talk about the past using **il passato prossimo** and **l'imperfetto**
- recognise key events in Italy's ancient history
- plan for an Italian-style party
- identify Italian food stores
- form diminutives with nouns to indicate size.

10

Arrivederci Roma...

165

You will learn how to:

- form and use the future tense (**il futuro**)
- talk about Italian cinema
- use the pronoun **ci**
- talk about future plans and occupations using **il futuro**
- identify and use double negatives
- compose a thankyou note.

Key grammatical terms 183

Verb tables 184

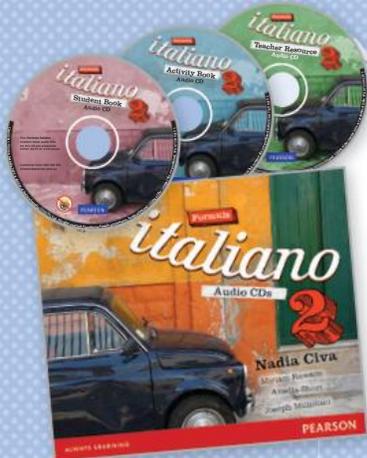
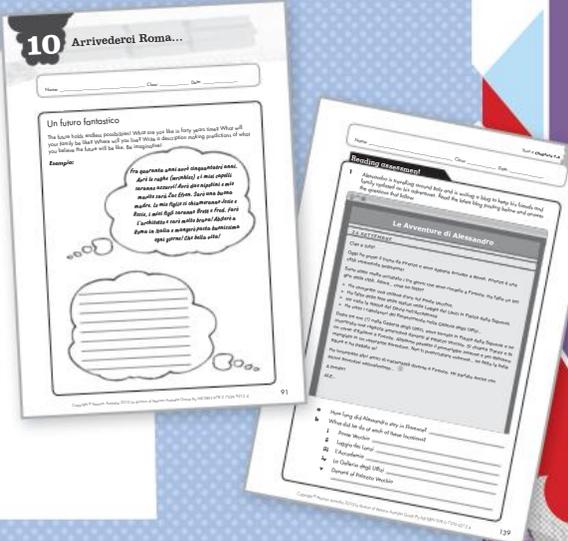
Italian–English wordlist 186

English–Italian wordlist 192

TEACHER RESOURCE

The teacher resource consists of a range of materials designed to support both the student and teacher in the classroom and at home. It includes:

- worksheets and homework sheets
- tests (also available in Word from the Teacher Resource Centre through the Teacher Lounge on Pearson Places)
- checklists
- solutions to all student activity book activities.



AUDIO CDS

The audio CDs provide high-quality recordings of the dialogues and listening activities in the student book and activity book, as well as the listening components of the tests included in the teacher resource.

The dialogues and listening activities have been recorded with native Italian speakers, at a pace suitable for beginner learners of Italian.

PEARSON PLACES



Pearson Places is the gateway to digital learning material for teachers and students across Australia. Sample the range of resources and register for free at www.pearsonplaces.com.au.

Each student book in the **Formula italiano** series is supported by its own Companion Website through the Student and Teacher Lounges on **Pearson Places**.

Student Lounge

Our Student Lounge contains engaging supplementary material for students, including:

- web destinations for each chapter, with a brief description of the content of each website
- drag-and-drop activities, to consolidate new learning and vocabulary
- chapter review quizzes with hints and explanations, automatic feedback and an email facility.

Teacher Lounge

Our password-protected Teacher Resource Centre contains teaching programs, audio scripts and editable tests in Word. It can be found through the Teacher Lounge on **Pearson Places**.



How to use this book

Formula italiano 2 student book has been written and designed for students continuing to learn Italian after completing the introductory course of *Formula italiano 1*. It has an even focus on listening and speaking, reading, writing and viewing to create an engaging and practical approach to learning Italian.

This student book consists of chapters with the following features:



Chapter opening pages include learning outcomes for the chapter and a photo relevant to the themes of the chapter. Chapter content follows the sequence of these outcomes.

Cartoon storyboards appear in all chapters. These follow the adventures of the main characters and introduce some of the key language to be found in the chapter.



Audio icons indicate where the audio recordings are linked to content. The audio is available on the student CD found in the front of the book, or on the *Formula italiano 2 Audio CDs*.

Activities appear regularly through a chapter, giving students opportunities to apply knowledge and skills. This continual reinforcement allows active consolidation of learning.



Investigazione linguistica sections provide specific information on aspects of grammar and language introduced in the chapter.



Investigazione culturale sections represent detailed cultural information about Italy, presented in context.



Glossario lists provide an easy reference for newly introduced language with English translations.



Tocca a te! are speaking activities performed with a partner or individually. These promote students' confidence in speaking, and generate fun at the front of the classroom!

The **Handy hint** feature provides helpful strategies and tips for students.

Handy hint

Cosa pensi? sections contain questions that challenge students to think about and discuss their learning. Students are encouraged to make connections with, and reflect on Italian language and culture.

Cosa pensi ?

Pearson Places icons indicate where activities are available for students on the *Formula italiano 2* Companion Website through the Student Lounge on **Pearson Places**. The text around each icon indicates the type of activity that is available.



Ripasso are revision sections that give students an opportunity to demonstrate their understanding of the outcomes listed in the chapter opening page.

Ripasso

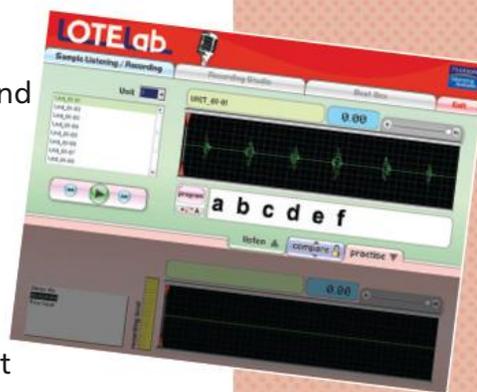
Riassunto sections contain vocabulary and grammar lists based on the chapter opening page outcomes. These are handy for reinforcing key language. They are also useful for homework or for study before tests.

Riassunto

Don't forget!

There are great interactive activities on the student CD found in the front of this book:

- Practise your Italian against that of a native speaker. Remember: practice makes perfect!
- Record your own Italian for classroom presentations, assessment or fun.
- Create your own music using the samples given, or import your own samples. Play your song and then record your own lyrics over the top of it.



L'Italia



GERMANIA

SLOVAKIA

AUSTRIA

SVIZZERA

UNGHERIA

Le Alpi

TRENTINO-ALTO ADIGE

Le Dolomiti

FRIULI-VENEZIA GIULIA

SLOVENIA

VALLE D'AOSTA

Aosta

LOMBARDIA

Milano

Trento

VENETO

Venezia

Trieste

CROAZIA

SERBIA

FRANCIA

PIEMONTE

Torino

EMILIA-ROMAGNA

Bologna

Genova

LIGURIA

mar Ligure

Il Po

L'Arno

Firenze

TOSCANA

Ancona

MARCHE

Perugia

UMBRIA

L'Aquila

ABRUZZO

mare Adriatico

MOLISE

Roma

LAZIO

Campobasso

CORSICA (FRANCIA)

Isola d'Elba

CITTÀ DEL VATICANO

LAZIO

L'Aquila

ABRUZZO

MOLISE

Bari

PUGLIA

Napoli

BASILICATA

CAMPANIA

Vesuvio

Potenza

mar Tirreno

BASILICATA

CALABRIA

mar Ionio

Bari

Potenza

Catanzaro

SARDEGNA

Cagliari

Palermo

Etna

SICILIA

KEY

Montagne (Mountainous areas)

Fiumi (Rivers)

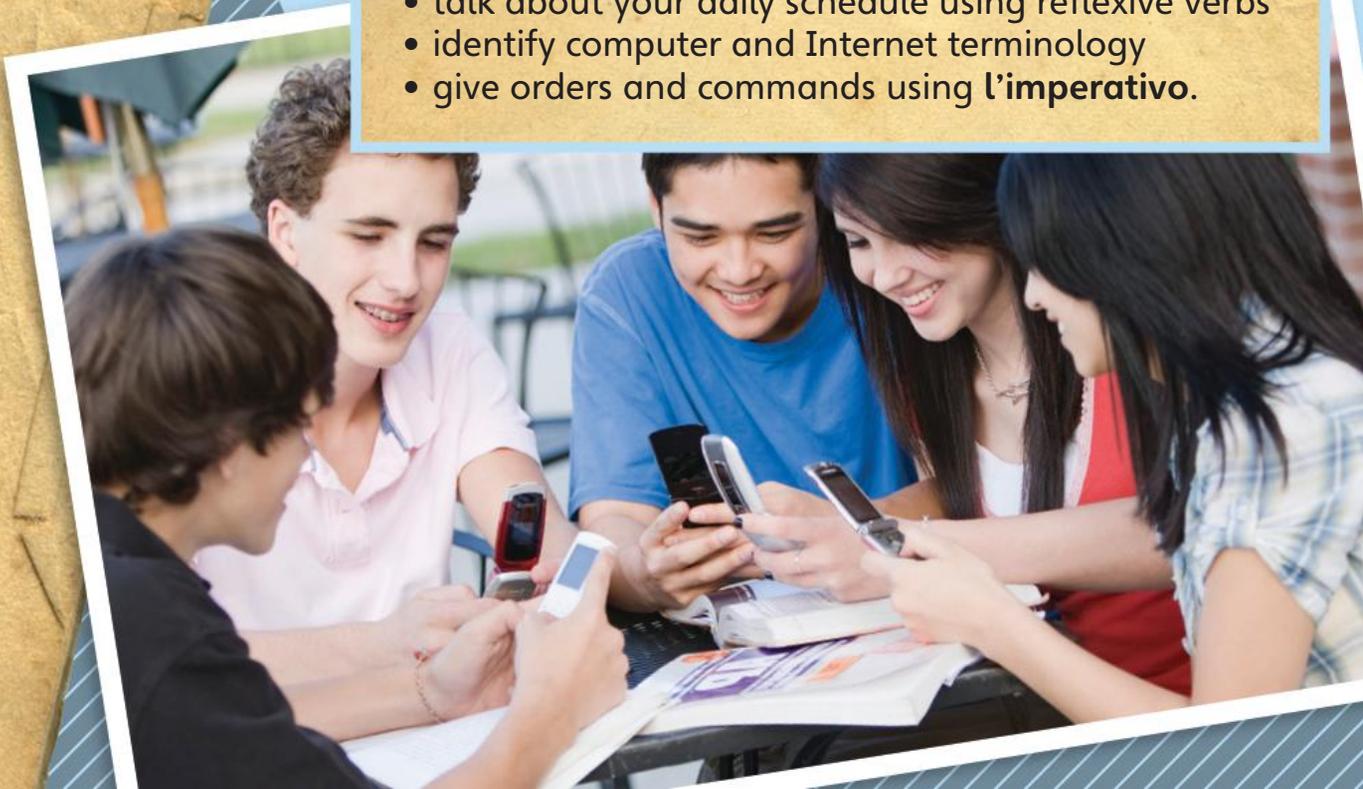
Laghi (Lakes)

0 100 200 300 km

Pronto! Chi parla?

You will learn how to:

- talk to people on the telephone
- use the verb **dovere**
- ask for and tell the time
- talk about your daily schedule using reflexive verbs
- identify computer and Internet terminology
- give orders and commands using **l'imperativo**.



Amici tecno



Nathan, one of the Australian **Atletitalia** competition winners on tour of Italy, is relaxing in his bedroom on a Saturday, when Roman tour guide Alessandro calls him to confirm a get-together.

1 Pronto! Chi parla?

Ciao Nathan! Sono Alessandro. Cosa fai?

2 Ah, ciao Alessandro! Sono in camera e mi riposo un po'. Ascolto la musica sul mio lettore MP3.

Bene. Senti, ci vediamo a casa tua alle cinque per navigare su Internet?

Certo! Ci vediamo dopo!

Più tardi...

3 Ciao amico!

Ciao! Sei in anticipo. Sono le cinque meno un quarto. Vieni vicino al computer. Controllo il mio sito ilMioSpazio.

4 ilMioSpazio? Fico! Cosa hai sul sito?

Ho il mio orario. Guarda... mi alzo alle sei e quindici... mi lavo alle sei e mezza... mi vesto e mi lavo i denti... e vado a scuola alle sette.

Devi essere molto organizzato!

5 E questa è la foto di Diana. Lei abita nell'appartamento al quinto piano.

Che bella!

Sì, mi piace da morire!

6 Clicca qui. Questa pagina mostra tutte le mie cose preferite. Guarda, la mia attrice preferita è Kristen Stewart, il mio gruppo preferito è AC/DC...

... il tuo cantante preferito è Justin Timberlake? Scherzo!



7 Accidenti! Sono in ritardo! Devo incontrare Diana in piazza alle cinque e mezza. Devo scappare!



D'accordo, divertiti! Adesso controllo il mio sito ilMioSpazio. Ti invito come amico.

Va bene. Spegni il computer quando finisci. Ciao!

ABC Glossario

nomi

l'attrice	the actress
il cantante	the singer
il computer	the computer
le cose	the things
la foto	the photo
il gruppo	the band
il lettore MP3	the MP3 player
l'orario	the schedule
la pagina	the page (web page)
il piano	the floor (of a building)
il sito	the website

aggettivo

organizzato/a	organised
----------------------	-----------

verbi

mi alzo	I get up (from alzarsi —to get up)
ascolto	I listen (from ascoltare —to listen)
clicca	click (from clicare —to click)
controllo	I check (from controllare —to check)
devi	you have to (from dovere —to have to)
devo	I have to (from dovere —to have to)
divertiti	enjoy yourself (from divertirsi —to enjoy oneself)
finisci	you finish (from finire —to finish)
guarda	look (from guardare —to look at/to watch)
incontrare	to meet
ti invito	I'll invite you (from invitare —to invite)
mi lavo	I wash myself (from lavarsi —to wash oneself)
mi lavo i denti	I brush my teeth (from lavare —to clean/to wash)



navigare su Internet	to surf the Internet
mi riposo	I'm resting (from riposarsi —to rest)
scappare	to run away
senti	listen (from sentire —to listen)
spegni	switch off (from spegnere —to switch off)
mi vesto	I dress myself (from vestirsi —to get dressed)
vieni	come (from venire —to come)

altre espressioni e parole

accidenti!	damn!/oh my gosh!
che bella!	she's cute!
chi parla?	who is speaking?
cosa fai?	what are you doing?
d'accordo	all right then
dopo	later
fico!	cool!
le mie cose preferite	my favourite things
mi piace da morire!	I'm mad about him/her/it!
scherzo!	you're joking!
sei in anticipo	you're early
sono in ritardo	I'm late

Handy hint

Remember, to help read unfamiliar words or phrases, look for *cognates* (words that look and sound like English words).

Attività 1.1

Look at the cartoon story and the **Glossario** to find the Italian translations for the below list of words. Then write six Italian sentences in your exercise book, using one of the words in each sentence. Your sentences should be different to those in the cartoon story.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1 computer | 4 MP3 player |
| 2 singer | 5 schedule |
| 3 photo | 6 website |

Attività 1.2

Refer to the cartoon story and answer these questions, in English, in your exercise book.

- 1 What time does Alessandro plan to be at Nathan's?
- 2 What is Nathan doing when Alessandro arrives at his place?
- 3 List three things Nathan has on his **ilMioSpazio** website.
- 4 Why does Nathan have to run off?
- 5 Who is Nathan meeting in a town square?



Talking to people on the telephone

Notice how Nathan and Alessandro spoke to each other on the telephone in the cartoon story. There are a few differences between the language Italians use on the phone and the language we as Australians and English speakers use. Look at the table below:

Italian expression	English equivalent
Pronto! (literally means 'I'm ready')	Hello!
Chi parla?	Who is speaking?
Sono io./Sono Anna.	It's me./It's Anna.
Sei tu?	Is that you?
Senti...	Listen ...

To ask for someone's phone number you say: **Qual è il tuo numero di telefono?** (What is your phone number?). To respond you could say: **Il mio numero di telefono è...** (My phone number is ...).

Another interesting difference is that when Italians say their phone numbers, they don't always say them number by number. Rather they sometimes say them in groups of two.

Esempi 6873 4665 **sessantotto settantatré quarantasei sessantacinque**

And when there is a zero in the group of two:

0452 78 39 75 **zero quattro cinquantadue settantotto trentanove settantacinque**



Handy hint

The country code for Italy is +39, just as the country code for Australia is +61.



Tocca a te!

In pairs, take turns to ask for and give these phone numbers in Italian. When you finish, you could pick one number and race each other to see who can say it the fastest.

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 9076 3453 | 4 6745 1234 |
| 2 0456 82 34 81 | 5 9832 1841 |
| 3 0243 67 36 12 | 6 5211 3989 |

Now try with these Italian phone numbers.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 0039 06 958167 | 3 0039 08 5901 9942 |
| 2 0039 34 9424 9620 | 4 0039 07 6219 9988 |





Dovere

Dovere (to have to) is a special kind of verb called a 'modal verb'. Modal verbs are verbs that need to be followed by another verb in the infinitive (e.g. **andare**). They are 'helping' verbs and can't stand alone. For example, in English, you can't just say: 'You have to the dishes.' You need to add an infinitive verb after the modal verb: 'You have to *clean* the dishes.'

- Esempi**
- Io devo leggere.** I have to read.
 - Tu devi parlare.** You have to speak.
 - Lei deve partire.** She has to leave.

Here is the full conjugation of the verb **dovere**.

	dovere	to have to
singular	(io) devo (tu) devi (lui/lei) deve	I have to you have to he/she/it has to
plural	(noi) dobbiamo (voi) dovete (loro) devono	we have to you have to they have to



Handy hint

Remember, you can't have two conjugated verbs together in the present tense.

Attività 1.3

In your exercise book, translate these sentences into English. You can use a dictionary or the wordlist at the back of the book if you need help.

- 1 Devo scappare.
- 2 Devono arrivare.
- 3 Devi parlare italiano.
- 4 Deve fare colazione.
- 5 Dobbiamo guardare la televisione.
- 6 Dovete trovare l'aeroporto.



Che ore sono? (The colloquial time)

You've already learnt how to use **alle** to express what time an event is taking place, like **alle quattro** (at four o'clock), **alle sette e mezza** (at seven thirty) or **all'una** (at one o'clock).

The clock face and table below show how to express the time by the hour and half hour in relation to the time of day.

Esempi **Vado a scuola alle otto e mezza di mattina.**
Il programma comincia alle sette di sera.

Sono le dodici./È mezzogiorno./
È mezzanotte.

Sono le undici.

È l'una.

Sono le dieci.

Sono le due.

Sono le nove.

Sono le tre.

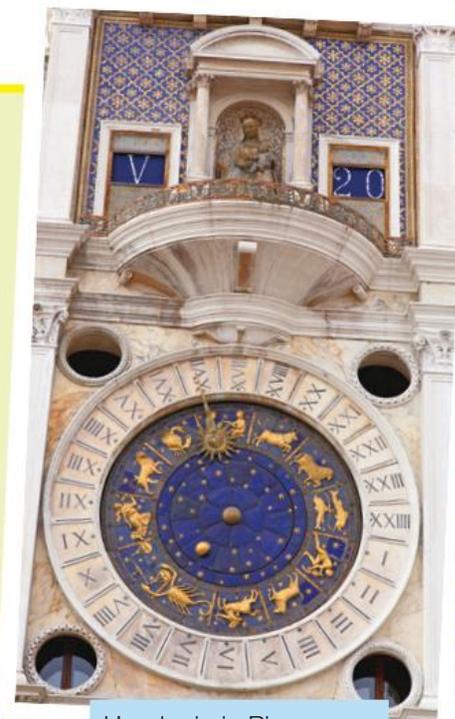
Sono le otto.

Sono le quattro.

Sono le sette.

Sono le cinque.

Sono le sei.



L'orologio in Piazza San Marco a Venezia

...di mattina.	... in the morning. (a.m.)
...del pomeriggio.	... in the afternoon. (p.m.)
...di sera.	... in the evening. (p.m.)
...di notte.	... at night. (p.m./a.m.)

Handy hint

Remember, you use 'È l'una.' instead of 'Sono le...' to say that it's one o'clock. You can also say 'È mezzogiorno.' (midday) or 'È mezzanotte.' (midnight) instead of 'Sono le dodici.'

To add minutes to the time, you simply add the number of minutes to the hour, or take away minutes from the next hour. Look at the examples below:

Sono le tre **e trenta**/
Sono le tre **e mezza**
(del pomeriggio).

3:30 PM

Sono le due **e quindici**/
Sono le due **e un**
quarto (di mattina).

2:15 AM

È l'una **e cinquantasei**/
Sono le due **meno**
quattro (di mattina).

1:56 AM



Che ore sono?

Sono le cinque del pomeriggio.



Did you notice that to express anything before and including thirty minutes past the hour the word **e** was used, and anything after half past the word **meno** was used? A good way to remember whether to use **e** or **meno** is to think of them as a mathematical sum. For example:

e means plus (+), so you add the number of minutes to the hour

Sono le due e ventinove del pomeriggio. It's 2.29 p.m.

hour + E + minutes elapsed

meno means minus (-), so you subtract the number of minutes from the next hour

Sono le undici meno dieci di notte. It's 10.50 p.m.

the next hour + MENO + minutes to the next hour

Notice in the example above that you need to subtract from **undici** (eleven) to get back to the tenth hour (or ten o'clock).

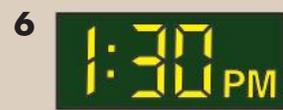


Tocca a te!

Look at the clocks below and, in pairs, take turns to ask and give one another the time in Italian.

Esempio A: Che ore sono?

B: Sono le nove di mattina.



Investigazione Culturale

Cosa pensi?

Can you think of any cases/contexts where the twenty-four hour clock is used in Australia? Why do you think it is used?

Twenty-four hour clock

In Italy, people often refer to the time using the twenty-four hour clock. So instead of starting at one again (after 12.00 p.m.), Italians continue counting (**Sono le tredici/le quattordici** etc.).

With twenty-four hour time **...di mattina, ...del pomeriggio** etc. aren't added to the expression of time. This is because they aren't needed as the time of day is implicit in the number being used.

L'orario per il lunedì

Monday's schedule

Below is a screen grab of a web page from Nathan's **ilMioSpazio** website that outlines his daily routine on a Monday.

ilMioSpazio Home Profile Inbox Search

6.00 a.m. Alle sei di mattina, mi sveglio.

6.15 a.m. Alle sei e quindici, mi alzo.

6.20 a.m. Alle sei e venti, faccio colazione.

6.30 a.m. Alle sei e mezza, mi faccio la doccia, mi lavo i denti e mi vesto.

7.00 a.m. Alle sette, vado a scuola con Diana. Andiamo in bici.

7.45 a.m. Alle otto meno un quarto, comincia la scuola.

10.15 a.m. Alle dieci e quindici, facciamo ricreazione e mi riposo un po'.

10.50 a.m. Alle dieci e cinquanta, ho inglese e studio la grammatica.

1.00 p.m. All'una del pomeriggio, finisce la scuola. Vado a casa e faccio i compiti.

3.40 p.m. Alle quattro meno venti, gioco a pallacanestro con i miei amici. Ci divertiamo tanto!

Mi alzo.

Mi lavo i denti.



nomi

i compiti

homework

la grammatica

the grammar

verbi

ci divertiamo

we enjoy ourselves (from **divertirsi**—to enjoy oneself)

mi faccio la doccia

I have a shower (from **farsi la doccia**—to have a shower)

finisce

he/she/it finishes (from **finire**—to finish)

mi sveglio

I wake up (from **svegliarsi**—to wake up)



Verbi riflessivi

Look at Nathan's **orario** on page 9 again. Can you see the reflexive verbs? Did you recognise any from your previous learning? Remember, reflexive verbs are a particular group of verbs in which the action is performed on, and 'reflected' back onto the subject.

Reflexive verbs are identifiable by the **-si** endings they carry in the infinitive form and the reflexive pronouns (**mi, ti, si, ci, vi, si**) that are placed before the verb when conjugated. Sometimes a normal infinitive verb can have a reflexive equivalent. Look at these examples:

Infinitive

Reflexive infinitive

lavare (to wash) → **lavarsi** (to wash oneself)

vestire (to dress) → **vestirsi** (to get dressed)

Here's a short guide on how to conjugate a reflexive verb:

- remove the reflexive **-si** ending (e.g. **lavarsi**)
- change the ending of the verb according to who is doing the action (e.g. **tu lavi**)
- include the appropriate reflexive pronoun before the verb. (e.g. **tu ti lavi**)

Take note that the infinitive of a reflexive verb doesn't always end in **-si**. It can sometimes end in **-mi** (after **io**) and **-ti** (after **tu**) when it follows a conjugated verb.

Esempi Io devo riposarmi. I have to rest.

Tu devi alzarti. You have to get up.

Notice that the verb **dovere** is conjugated, so the reflexive verb has to be in the infinitive. This follows the rule that you can't have two conjugated verbs together in the present tense.

Here are some examples of commonly used reflexive verbs.



Io mi pettino i capelli.
pettinarsi to brush one's hair



I cani si divertono.
divertirsi to enjoy oneself

Handy hint

You have already learnt a bit about **verbi riflessivi** in *Formula italiano 1* student book on pages 151-2.

Handy hint

Sometimes you will see a reflexive verb with a reflexive pronoun (**mi, ti, si, ci, vi, si**) but without a subject pronoun (**io, tu, lui/lei, noi, voi, loro**). For example, you could use **mi riposo** instead of **io mi riposo**.





Clara si mette la giacca.
mettersi to put on oneself



Ahh! Adesso io mi ricordo!
ricordarsi to remember



Il giocatore si veste.
vestirsi to get dressed



Giulio si alza alle sette di mattina.
alzarsi to get up



Noi ci svegliamo alle otto.
svegliarsi to wake up



Mio padre si riposa.
riposarsi to rest



Voi vi lavate le mani.
lavarsi to wash oneself



Io mi faccio la doccia.
farsi la doccia to have a shower

Handy hint

Remember that the verb **fare** is irregular. It retains its irregular conjugation even in its reflexive form.

Attività 1.4

Look at the cartoon story again. Identify all of the reflexive verbs and write their infinitive and conjugated forms in your exercise book. Then choose two of the reflexive verbs to write your own sentences using these reflexive forms.

Attività 1.5



Listen to Melanie talking about her schedule for the morning. In your exercise book, answer the following questions, in English, based on the information you hear.

- 1 What time does Melanie get up?
- 2 What does Melanie do after eating breakfast?
- 3 How do Melanie and her friends go to school?
- 4 What does Melanie do at recess?
- 5 For which subject does Melanie say she has misplaced her homework?



Tocca a te!

Using the reflexive verbs mentioned in this chapter, ask a classmate what time he/she does certain actions. Your partner will need to respond using reflexive verbs and expressions of time also. Take turns to ask and respond.

Esempio **A:** A che ora ti svegli?
B: Mi sveglio alle sette di mattina.



Investigazione Culturale



Su Internet

As in Australia and many other countries, young people in Italy use the Internet for social networking to chat and keep up-to-date with friends and family all over the world. If you use social networking websites to communicate with others, you can even access your web page(s) via the Italian website equivalents.

Search engines operate in the same way as in an English-speaking country—there are Italian versions of Yahoo! and Google online, along with dedicated Italian search engines.

However, there are some differences when it comes to the Internet and computers. In Australia, many websites end in **.au** to indicate to the user that the website is Australian. In Italy, **.it** is used instead for the same purpose. Italians use different keyboards as well to help with typing letters with accents.



la tastiera italiana

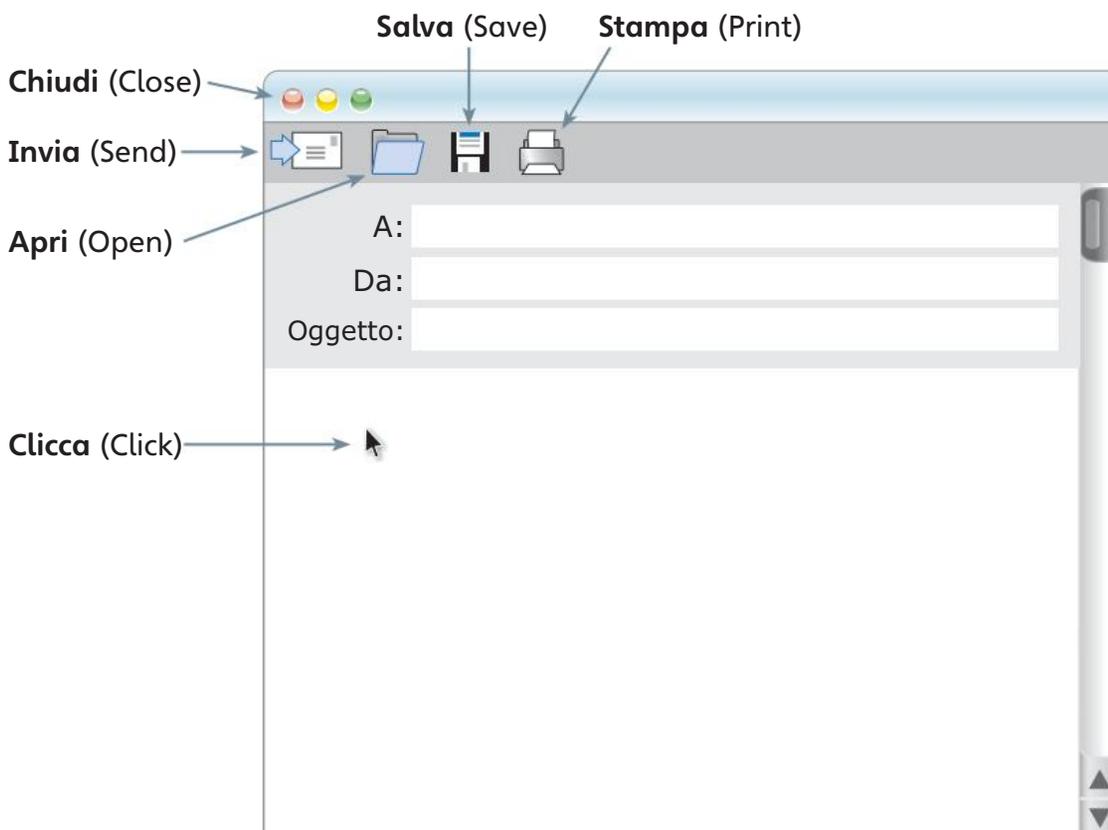
Cosa pensi ?

- 1 In an age where English is one of the world's dominant languages, why do you think Italians still translate English-based websites from around the world into Italian (e.g. MySpace and Facebook)?
- 2 How do you usually communicate with your friends online? Do you use social networking websites or email etc. to chat with friends? Do you think young people in Italy communicate in the same way?
- 3 Have you ever thought about using your social networking sites in Italian?

Linguaggio tecnologico

Technological language

Many of the Italian words and phrases associated with computers, the Internet and technology generally come from the English language. The email frame below shows examples of Italian words for commonly used computer commands.



Computer and Internet terminology

Below are more common words associated with computers and the web. Note that there are plenty of cognates.

nomi

l'accesso/il login	the login
il blog	the blog
il link	the link
l'email	the email
l'indirizzo	the web address
Internet	the Internet
il nome utente	the username
la pagina web	the web page
la password	the password
il podcast	the podcast
il sito web	the website
il tasto d'invio	the enter key
l'uscita/il logout	the logout

verbi

andare avanti	to go forward
andare indietro	to go back
cancellare	to delete
cercare	to search
controllare	to check (emails/ website content)
fare l'upload or caricare	to upload
inviare	to send
scaricare	to download

Handy hint

Take care when you conjugate **caricare**, **scaricare** and **cercare**. Because they end in -**care** you have to add a 'ch' to the **tu** and **noi** conjugations to keep the 'k' sound.

tu scarichi, noi scarichiamo, tu cerchi, noi cerchiamo

Fermate qui
per favore.



Investigazione Linguistica

L'imperativo

The word **clicca** was used in the cartoon story earlier in the chapter when Nathan was giving Alessandro instructions about navigating his **ilMioSpazio** website. Though **clicca** and the other computer commands may look like forms of verbs in their present tense, they are actually examples of the grammar form known as **l'imperativo** (the imperative).

In Italian, **l'imperativo** is used when giving an order, a command or an instruction. In English, we usually add an exclamation mark to emphasise the order. Other examples of the imperative from the cartoon story are **Guarda** (Look!) and **Spegni il computer** (Turn off the computer!).



Using **l'imperativo** is simple. Look at the imperative form for the **-are**, **-ere** and **-ire** verbs in the tables that follow. They will give you the pattern to follow when conjugating verbs in the imperative **tu** and **voi** forms.

Note that the imperative form doesn't take a subject pronoun.

-ARE verbs

Infinitive	Present tense for tu (singular) and voi (plural)	Imperative tense for tu (singular) and voi (plural)
clickare (to click)	(tu) clicchi (you click)	Clicca! (Click!)
	(voi) cliccate (you click)	Cliccate! (Click!)
fermare (to stop)	(tu) fermi (you stop)	Ferma! (Stop!)
	(voi) fermate (you stop)	Fermate! (Stop!)

-ERE and **-IRE** verbs

Infinitive	Present tense for tu (singular) and voi (plural)	Imperative tense for tu (singular) and voi (plural)
chiudere (to close)	(tu) chiudi (you close)	Chiudi! (Close!)
	(voi) chiudete (you close)	Chiudete! (Close!)
finire (to finish)	(tu) finisci (you finish)	Finisci! (Finish!)
	(voi) finite (you finish)	Finite! (Finish!)

These forms of **l'imperativo** would be used when telling one or more people what to do, when you would normally speak to them using the **tu** or **voi** forms. There is also a **noi** form of **l'imperativo**, which is the same as the present tense **noi** form (e.g. **Andiamo!**).



Handy hint

Notice that the **tu** imperative form of **-are** verbs looks like (but isn't) the present tense of the **lui/lei** form.

Handy hint

Notice that the imperative form of **-ere** and **-ire** verbs looks the same as the present tense. This makes them even easier to remember; you just need to add emphasis by changing the tone of your voice when you express them as an order.

Cosa pensi?

Compare the imperative in Italian to the imperative in English. Do you think they work in the same way?

Handy hint

It is important to remember that even though the imperative looks like the present tense, it is a completely different tense.

Attività 1.6

Change these verbs into the **tu** imperative form and express them as orders to a partner.

Esempio chiudere → **Chiudi!**

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 mangiare | 5 dormire |
| 2 aprire | 6 scrivere |
| 3 guardare | 7 cantare |
| 4 parlare | 8 ascoltare |

Attività 1.7

Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

A	Ciao amico! Salve amica!	Cosa fai?
----------	-----------------------------	-----------

B	Ascolto musica sul mio lettore MP3. Mi riposo un po'. Mi diverto con i videogiochi.
----------	---

A	Bene. Fico!	Vuoi andare in bici? in skateboard? in motorino?
----------	----------------	---

B	Sì, ma prima devo	fare i compiti. inviare un'email. controllare il mio sito ilMioSpazio.
----------	-------------------	--

A	Anch'io devo	fare i compiti. inviare un'email. controllare il mio sito ilMioSpazio.
----------	--------------	--

B	Allora, ci incontriamo	alle sette di sera? alle quindici? alle due del pomeriggio?
----------	------------------------	---

A	Va bene, No,	ci vediamo alle sette di sera. alle quindici. alle due del pomeriggio.
----------	-----------------	---

B	A più tardi! A dopo! A presto!
----------	--------------------------------------

ABC Glossario

a dopo
see you later

allora
in that case

ci incontriamo
we'll meet

i videogiochi
the video games

vuoi andare...?
do you want to go ...?

Ripasso

- 1 Match the subject pronoun with the correct conjugation of the verb **dovere** by drawing a line between the two.

noi	devono
lei	devo
io	devi
loro	dovete
tu	dobbiamo
lui	deve
voi	deve

- 2 Complete the sentences in your exercise book with appropriate technological language.

- a Per inviare un'email, clicca su _____.
- b Voglio _____ il podcast.
- c Per entrare in un sito sicuro, devi usare un _____ e una _____.
- d Devo _____ un'email alla mia amica.
- e Devo _____ le mie email.
- f Clicca su _____ per andare avanti nel sito.

- 3 For each picture, write a sentence in Italian in your exercise book that describes what Giulio is doing, including the time the activity is taking place.

Esempio Sono le sette e trentacinque di mattina e Giulio si pettina i capelli.



- 4 Create a list of commands using the imperative and a dictionary to help you with new vocabulary. Then try them out on your teacher and classmates. Here are a few to get you started.

Corri veloce!	Run fast!
Chiudi la porta!	Shut the door!
Salva il documento!	Save the document!

Riassunto

Now you can:

identify computer and Internet terminology

l'accesso/il login	the login
il blog	the blog
il link	the link
l'email	the email
l'indirizzo	the web address
Internet	the Internet
il nome utente	the username
la pagina web	the web page
la password	the password
il podcast	the podcast
il sito web	the website
il tasto d'invio	the enter key
l'uscita/il logout	the logout

talk about your daily schedule using reflexive verbs

alzarsi	to get up
divertirsi	to enjoy oneself
farsi la doccia	to have a shower
lavarsi	to wash oneself
mettersi	to put on oneself
pettinarsi	to brush one's hair
ricordarsi	to remember
riposarsi	to rest
svegliarsi	to wake up
vestirsi	to get dressed

	alzarsi	to get up
singular	(io) mi alzo	I get up
	(tu) ti alzi	you get up
	(lui/lei) si alza	he/she/it gets up
plural	(noi) ci alziamo	we get up
	(voi) vi alzate	you get up
	(loro) si alzano	they get up

talk to people on the telephone

Pronto! (literally means 'I'm ready')	Hello!
Chi parla?	Who is speaking?
Sono io./Sono Anna.	It's me./It's Anna.
Sei tu?	Is that you?
Senti...	Listen ...
Qual è il tuo numero di telefono?	What is your phone number?
Il mio numero di telefono è...	My phone number is ...

use the verb dovere

	dovere	to have to
singular	(io) devo	I have to
	(tu) devi	you have to
	(lui/lei) deve	he/she/it has to
plural	(noi) dobbiamo	we have to
	(voi) dovete	you have to
	(loro) devono	they have to

ask for and tell the time

Che ore sono? What time is it?

È l'una.	It's one o'clock.	Sono le otto.	It's eight o'clock.
Sono le due.	It's two o'clock.	Sono le nove.	It's nine o'clock.
Sono le tre.	It's three o'clock.	Sono le dieci.	It's ten o'clock.
Sono le quattro.	It's four o'clock.	Sono le undici.	It's eleven o'clock.
Sono le cinque.	It's five o'clock.	Sono le dodici.	It's twelve o'clock.
Sono le sei.	It's six o'clock.	È mezzogiorno.	It's midday.
Sono le sette.	It's seven o'clock.	È mezzanotte.	It's midnight.

give orders and commands using l'imperativo

Infinitive	Present tense for tu and voi	Imperative tense for tu and voi
cliccare (to click)	(tu) clicchi (you click)	Clicca! (Click!)
	(voi) cliccate (you click)	Cliccate! (Click!)
chiudere (to close)	(tu) chiudi (you close)	Chiudi! (Close!)
	(voi) chiudete (you close)	Chiudete! (Close!)
finire (to finish)	(tu) finisci (you finish)	Finisci! (Finish!)
	(voi) finite (you finish)	Finite! (Finish!)



Mamma mia!

Quanti messaggi!

You will learn how to:

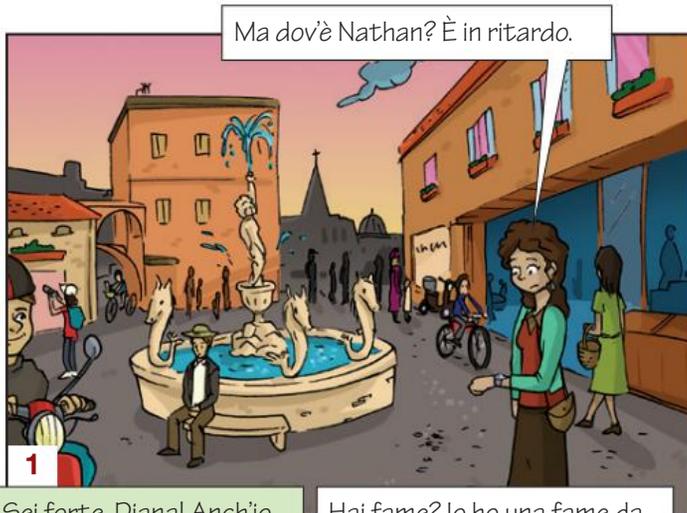
- use some common Italian expressions
- identify Italian film genres
- talk about your favourite things using the adjective **preferito/a**
- use the various forms of the adjective **quello**
- use the irregular verbs **dire**, **venire** and **uscire**
- use the prepositions **da**, **di**, **in**, **a**, **con** and **per**
- write emails and text messages in Italian.





Un appuntamento in centro

Nathan is running late for his date with Diana. They're meeting in a **piazza** and will decide what to do from there.



Ma dov'è Nathan? È in ritardo.



Scusa, Diana! Arrivo! Sono in ritardo!

Era ora, ma non m'importa adesso che sei qui. Sono contenta di vederti.



Sei forte, Diana! Anch'io sono felice che usciamo. Cosa vuoi fare?

Hai fame? Io ho una fame da lupo! Possiamo cenare e dopo forse vediamo un film?

RISTORANTE

GELATERIA

Certo! Ottima idea!



Che cosa vuoi mangiare, Diana?

Vorrei una limonata perché ho sete e una pizza margherita. E tu?

Ho voglia di una grande bistecca. Ma quando viene il cameriere?



Buonasera. Cosa desiderate?

Prendiamo due limonate, una pizza margherita e una bistecca con patatine. Abbiamo un po' fretta. Vogliamo vedere un film dopo cena.

Certo. Cerchiamo di fare presto.



Chi è?

È la mia amica Stella. Lei mi chiede cosa faccio. Dico che ceniamo e poi andiamo a vedere un film.





ABC Glossario

nomi

la bistecca	the steak
il cameriere	the waiter
la famiglia che mi ospita	the host family
il film	the film
il film giallo	the thriller (film)
i film romantici	the romantic (comedy) films
la limonata	the lemonade
le patatine	the chips
la pizza margherita	the margherita pizza
l'SMS	the SMS

aggettivi

nuovo/a	new
quei	those (form of quello)
quel	that (form of quello)

verbi

cenare	to dine/to have dinner
ceniamo	we dine/we have dinner (from cenare —to dine/to have dinner)
cerchiamo	we try (from cercare —to try)
chiede	he/she/it asks (from chiedere —to ask)
desiderate	you (plural) desire/like (from desiderare —to desire)
dico	I say (from dire —to say/to tell)
esco	I go out (from uscire —to go out)
mandare	to send
possiamo	we can (from potere —to be able to)



Handy hint

The word **vogliamo** is the **noi** form of the modal verb **volere**. You have already come across this verb in your previous learning in the form of **voglio** (I want) and **vorrei** (I would like).

usciamo	we go out (from uscire —to go out)
vederti	to see you (from vedersi —to see oneself)
viene	he/she/it comes (from venire —to come)
vogliamo	we want (from volere —to want to)

altre espressioni e parole

che film vuoi vedere?	what film do you want to see?
abbiamo un po' fretta e poi...	we're in a bit of a hurry and then ...
era ora...	about time ...
fare presto	to be quick
hai fame?	are you hungry?
ho bisogno di...	I need to ...
ho paura di...	I'm scared of ...
ho sete	I'm thirsty
ho una fame da lupo!	I'm starving!
ho voglia di...	I feel like ...
lei mi chiede cosa faccio	she is asking me what I'm doing
non m'importa	I don't care
ottima idea!	great idea!
perché	because
vediamo...	we'll see ...

Ma dov'è Nathan? È in ritardo.



Attività 2.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
| 1 | Nathan arrives on time to his date with Diana. | V | F |
| 2 | Diana is angry at Nathan when he arrives. | V | F |
| 3 | Diana isn't very hungry. | V | F |
| 4 | Diana says she is thirsty. | V | F |
| 5 | Nathan wants to eat a steak. | V | F |
| 6 | Diana's friend is asking what time she'll be home. | V | F |
| 7 | Nathan needs Stephen's motor scooter. | V | F |
| 8 | Diana wants to see a thriller after dinner. | V | F |



Common Italian expressions

Have you ever noticed how some things we say in English are actually quite strange if you take them literally? For example: 'She annoyed Simon so much that he hit the roof.' Did Simon actually hit the roof? These kinds of sayings are called idiomatic expressions.

Idiomatic expressions are also part of the Italian language. Here are some commonly used Italian **espressioni** and **espressioni idiomatiche**.

Italian expression	English translation
Accidenti!	Damn!/Oh my gosh!
In bocca al lupo!	Break a leg!/Good luck!
Crepi!	Thanks! (Only in response to In bocca al lupo!)
Era ora!	About time!
Fico!	Cool!
Ho una fame da lupo!	I'm starving!
Mamma mia!	Dear me!
Mi piace da morire!	I'm mad about him/her/it!
Non ci ho visto più.	I lost my temper.
Non m'importa.	I don't care.
Non vedo l'ora di (+ infinitive)...	I can't wait until ...
Sei forte!	You're great!
Sono nei guai.	I'm in a pickle.
Quando il gatto non c'è i topi ballano.	When the cat is away the mice will play.



Cosa pensi ?

How many English idiomatic expressions can you think of? Do you use idiomatic expressions in conversation often?

Ho una fame da lupo! Non vedo l'ora di mangiare.



Handy hint

Italians use the expression '**In bocca al lupo!**' in the same way English speakers use the phrase 'Break a leg!' to wish someone good luck. '**In bocca al lupo!**' translates literally to 'In the mouth of the wolf'. The appropriate Italian reply to the expression is '**Crepi!**' ('May the wolf die!').

Attività 2.2

Read the dialogue below and answer the questions that follow, in English, in your exercise book.

Silvana: Ciao Fabio! Come stai?

Fabio: Ciao Silvana! Sto bene, ma ho una fame da lupo!

Silvana: Perché? Non hai mangiato oggi?

Fabio: No, ma non vedo l'ora di mangiare. Devo parlare in classe oggi.

Silvana: Ah sì? Sei nervoso, allora? Di cosa devi parlare?

Fabio: Ecco perché sono nervoso! Non lo so.

Silvana: Accidenti! Sei nei guai, allora.

Fabio: Sì! Penso che la prof mi ammazza!

Silvana: Non preoccuparti! Sei forte!

Fabio: Grazie. Devo andare adesso. La mia classe comincia.

Silvana: In bocca al lupo!

Fabio: Crepi!

1 How is Fabio feeling?

2 What can't he wait to do?

3 What is the subject of Fabio's class talk?

4 What does Fabio think the teacher will do to him?

5 How does Silvana encourage him?

6 Why does Fabio have to end the conversation?



aggettivo

nervoso/a nervous

avverbio

allora then

verbo

penso I think (from **pensare**—to think)

altre espressioni e parole

di cosa	of what
mi ammazza	he/she/it will kill me
non hai mangiato	you have not eaten
non lo so	I don't know



With a partner, practise saying the dialogue from **Attività 2.2** aloud. When you and your partner can confidently say one character's part, swap roles.



Italian expressions that use avere

Look back at the cartoon story again. Can you see that **ho** and **hai** (followed by other phrases) occur a lot but don't necessarily mean 'to have' something? These are all expressions that use the verb **avere**. Examples of these expressions are found in the table.

Italian expression	English translation
avere bisogno di...	to need ...
avere caldo	to be hot (body temperature)
avere fame	to be hungry
avere freddo	to be cold (body temperature)
avere fretta	to be in a hurry
avere paura di...	to be afraid of ...
avere ragione	to be right
avere sete	to be thirsty
avere sonno	to be sleepy
avere torto	to be wrong
avere voglia di...	to feel like ...

It is easy to use these expressions in your Italian. All you need to do is conjugate **avere** and add the phrase afterwards.

Esempi **Abbiamo fame.** We are hungry.
Hanno caldo. They are (feel) hot.



Handy hint

Don't get confused! **Avere** usually means 'to have' but when you combine it with other phrases it can mean 'to be', 'to need', 'to want' or even 'to hurry'.

Cosa pensi ?

Can you think of any English verbs that can mean different things when combined with other words? For example, think about the English expression 'to be running late'. There may not be any physical 'running' involved but 'I'm running late' is a common English expression used to convey when a person is behind schedule.

Attività 2.3

Work out how to say these expressions using **avere** in Italian and write your answers in your exercise book. Then with a partner, take turns saying them to each other.

- I'm hungry.
- He is cold.
- You (singular) are afraid.
- I need a mobile phone.
- Margot and I are thirsty.
- You (singular) feel like pizza.
- Suzie is in a hurry.
- We are right.
- She is sleepy.
- You (plural) are wrong.



Investigazione Culturale

Italian film genres

In the cartoon story, Nathan and Diana talk about **film gialli** which, when translated literally, is 'yellow films' but really means thriller/mystery films in Italian. It could seem strange that **gli italiani** would refer to films as a colour, but the term originates from the late 1920s when an Italian publishing house published a series of thriller, crime and mystery novels with yellow covers: **i romanzi gialli**.

When cinema became popular, Italian film companies took inspiration from the yellow covers and adopted the term **film gialli** to describe the thriller/mystery genre.

Here are some other film genres translated into Italian.

- i film di fantascienza** science-fiction films
- i film dell'orrore** horror films
- i film comici** comedy films
- i film drammatici** drama films
- i film romantici** romantic (comedy) films



La ragazza che sapeva troppo (*The Girl Who Knew Too Much*) is a famous Italian **film giallo** that was released in 1963.

Cosa pensi ?

Are there any types of film that have odd genre names in English? Can you think of why they might have been labelled like this?

Handy hint

Mi piace is used to express liking a singular object. **Mi piacciono** is used to express liking more than one (plural) object.



Investigazione Linguistica

Cosa preferisci?

There are a few common phrases in Italian to express liking something. You already know one: **mi piace...** (I like ...). To say that something is your favourite, you use the adjective **preferito/a** and follow this pattern:

- Il mio attore preferito è...** My favourite actor is ... (masculine singular)
- I miei attori preferiti sono...** My favourite actors are ... (masculine plural)
- La mia attrice preferita è...** My favourite actress is ... (feminine singular)
- Le mie attrici preferite sono...** My favourite actresses are ... (feminine plural)

To begin a sentence to express that something is your favourite, you need to start with a possessive adjective (**il mio, la mia, i miei, le mie**) that agrees with your favourite thing. You also need to use the adjective **preferito/a** and adjust the ending (**preferito, preferita, preferiti, preferite**) depending on the gender (masculine or feminine) and number (one or more) of the thing being preferred.

Le mie cose preferite

My favourite things

Examine this web page from Nathan's **ilMioSpazio** website that lists all his favourite things.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title "Le cose preferite di Nathan!". The browser's address bar shows "ilMioSpazio" with navigation links for "Home", "Profile", and "Inbox", and a search bar. The main content area lists Nathan's preferences:

- Passatempi preferiti:** uscire con i miei amici, andare al cinema, ascoltare la musica, giocare con i videogiochi e andare a pesca
- Sport preferiti:** la pallacanestro e il tennis (Forza Rafa!)
- Attrice preferita:** Kristen Stewart
- Gruppo preferito:** AC/DC
- Cantante preferito:** Justin Timberlake
- Cibo preferito:** la bistecca
- Squadre preferite (di calcio):** Melbourne Victory e Juventus

Below the text are two photos: a portrait of Kristen Stewart and an action shot of Rafael Nadal playing tennis. Each photo has a caption below it: "Kristen Stewart" and "Rafael Nadal".

Attività 2.4

Refer to the web page from Nathan's **ilMioSpazio** website above. Write five Italian sentences, in your exercise book, that explain what his favourite things are. Make sure you use the correct form of the adjective **preferito/a**.

Esempio Il suo cibo preferito è la bistecca.

Handy hint

Remember, if you are referring to Nathan (using 'his'), you will need to use the correct form of the possessive adjective (**il suo**). Watch out for plurals too!

Handy hint

When you are referring to yourself, make sure you use the correct form of the possessive adjective **il mio**.

Tocca a te!

Now ask a partner what his/her favourite things are. Take turns to ask and respond.

Esempio A: Qual è il tuo cibo preferito?

B: Il mio cibo preferito è la pasta.



Quello

You may remember from previous learning the different forms of the adjective **questo**, which means 'this' or 'these'. To say 'that' or 'those', Italians use the different forms of the adjective **quello**.

Masculine		
Singular	Plural	Use
quel	quei	Used before nouns beginning with a consonant (e.g. quel ragazzo , quei ragazzi)
quell'	quegli	Used before nouns beginning with a vowel (e.g. quell'amico , quegli amici)
quello	quegli	Used before nouns beginning with z or s plus a consonant— st , sp , sc , sn etc. (e.g. quello sport , quegli sport)
Feminine		
Singular	Plural	Use
quella	quelle	Used before nouns beginning with a consonant (e.g. quella ragazza , quelle ragazze)
quell'	quelle	Used before nouns beginning with a vowel (e.g. quell'amica , quelle amiche)

Handy hint

Notice how the different forms of **quello** follow the same pattern as definite articles (e.g. **il ragazzo**, **la ragazza** etc.).

Attività 2.5

Write the correct form of **quello** for these nouns in your exercise book. Careful, the definite article has not been included, so take note of the first and last letters of the noun to help you write the correct form of **quello**.

Esempio ragazza → **quella ragazza**

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1 treno | 6 bambini |
| 2 giacca | 7 cugine |
| 3 americano | 8 zio |
| 4 occhi | 9 animale |
| 5 coniglio | 10 scuola |



Verbi irregolari

Expand your Italian by learning these irregular verbs.

Dire

	dire	to say/to tell
singular	(io) dico	I say/tell
	(tu) dici	you say/tell
	(lui/lei) dice	he/she/it says/tells
plural	(noi) diciamo	we say/tell
	(voi) dite	you say/tell
	(loro) dicono	they say/tell

Use **che** for 'that' in expressions involving **dire**. For example, to say 'I say that ...' (**Io dico che...**) you would say: **Io dico che oggi è una bella giornata.** (I say that today is a beautiful day.)

Similarly, use **a** for 'to' when you want to direct your **dire** expression to someone. For example, to say 'I say to ...' (**Io dico a...**) you would say: **Io dico buongiorno a mio padre.** (I say good morning to my father.)

Venire

	venire	to come
singular	(io) vengo	I come
	(tu) vieni	you come
	(lui/lei) viene	he/she/it comes
plural	(noi) veniamo	we come
	(voi) venite	you come
	(loro) vengono	they come

Can you remember when you've used **vengo** and **vieni** before? You used these forms of **venire** to say where you come from. Can you remember which two prepositions you used after **vengo** and **vieni**? They were **da** to say you come *from* a city, and **a** or **in** to say you come *to* a city or country.

Esempi **Io vengo da Dublino.** I come from Dublin.

Tu vieni a Sydney. You come to Sydney.

Lei viene in Canada. She comes to Canada.

You will learn more about prepositions later in this chapter.

Handy hint

Remember, some verbs are irregular because they don't follow the normal pattern of conjugation.

Io dico che mio fratello è pazzo!

Tu dici sempre così.



Handy hint

Uscita is a useful word to know when travelling in Italy. It means 'way out' or 'exit'.

Uscire

	uscire	to go out
singular	(io) esco (tu) esci (lui/lei) esce	I go out you go out he/she/it goes out
plural	(noi) usciamo (voi) uscite (loro) escono	we go out you go out they go out

Use **con** for 'with' in expressions involving **uscire**. For example, to say 'I go out with ...' (**Io esco con...**) you would say: **Io esco con il mio amico.** (I go out with my friend.)



Attività 2.6

Work out how to say these sentences in Italian and write your answers in your exercise book. Then with a partner, take turns saying them to each other.

- 1 I go out at three o'clock.
- 2 You (plural) come to school.
- 3 We say 'hello' to them.
- 4 You (singular) come home.
- 5 Stefan and Joanna say it's a good film.
- 6 My aunt goes out a bit.
- 7 Emma comes from Rome.
- 8 They say that the boy is cute.



Investigazione Linguistica



Le preposizioni

Preposizioni (prepositions) are 'function words' used in front of a noun, usually to show the relationship to another word (often another noun) in the sentence. Look at the examples in the sentences below.

The **book** is **on** the **table**.

(noun) (preposition) (noun)

The **shirts** are **in** the **wardrobe**.

(noun) (preposition) (noun)



Here is a list of common Italian prepositions and examples of their usage.

Prepositions		Examples	
da	from/by	Mardi viene da Brisbane.	Mardi comes from Brisbane.
di	of	Suzie ha bisogno di una gonna rosa.	Suzie is in need of (needs) a pink skirt.
in	in	Io vengo in Italia.	I come to Italy.
a	at/to	Vado a casa mia.	I go to my house.
con	with	Loro escono con i loro genitori.	They go out with their parents.
per	for	La torta è per mio zio.	The cake is for my uncle.

Abito a Sydney con la mia famiglia.



Investigazione Culturale

Al telefono

Did you know that Italy has the highest number of mobile phones per capita in all of Europe? Over 147 per cent of the population has a mobile phone—this means there are more mobile phones in use than people in Italy! By comparison, Australian mobile phone usage is at 93 per cent of the population. Looks like **gli italiani** like to chat on the phone and send text messages more than we do!

Here is a list of useful telephone vocabulary.

il cellulare/il telefonino	the mobile phone
l'SMS	the SMS
la suoneria	the ringtone
mandare un SMS a...	to send a SMS to ...
telefonare a...	to telephone ...

Ciao Gianni! Sono Pino. Come stai? Esco con...



Attività 2.7



Listen to Diana and Nathan's telephone conversation and, in Italian, answer these questions in your exercise book.

- 1 Come sta Nathan?
- 2 Che cosa chiede Nathan a Diana?
- 3 Cosa ha voglia di fare Nathan?
- 4 Anche Diana ha voglia di fare questa cosa?

Handy hint

Remember, you can use the words from the questions in your answers!



SMS italiani



Just like people in English-speaking countries, Italians use abbreviations when sending SMS or chatting online using instant messaging programs. Below is a list of some of the common abbreviations used.



SMS abbreviation	Italian expression	English translation	Example
c	ci	we	c vediamo domani
6	sei (essere)	you are	dove 6?
c6	ci sei?	are you there?	c6?
cm	come	how	cm stai?
cs	cosa	what	cs fai?
dp	dopo	after	arrivo dp
nn	non	not	nn vengo oggi
qnd	quando	when	qnd ci vediamo?
qst	questo/a/i/e	this	mi piace qst ragazzo
ta	ti amo	I love you (to a boyfriend/girlfriend)	ta amore
tvb	ti voglio tanto bene	I love you a lot (to a family member or a friend)	tvb amico mio
x	per	for	c'è un messaggio x te

Handy hint

There are two ways to say 'I love you.' in Italian. **'Ti amo.'** is used for romantic love between people, whereas **'Ti voglio bene.'** is said to close friends and family members.

Cosa pensi ?

Do you think that the trend to abbreviate language for SMS and online messaging communication has had a negative impact on how we spell? If yes, in what way? Do you believe that a language should be altered in this way? Why or why not?

Attività 2.8

Write a text message, using Italian abbreviations, to a classmate on a piece of paper for them to translate and read aloud. Then your partner will write their response for you to translate and read.

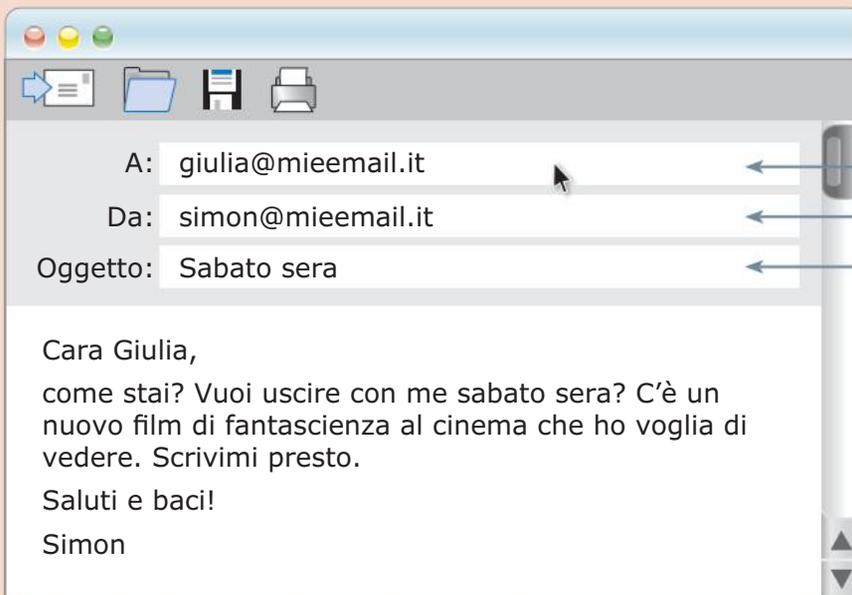


Investigazione Culturale



L'email

Emailing in Italian is very similar to emailing in English. Here is some vocabulary to help you write emails in Italian.



Glossario

l'email (f) (the email)

A: (To:)

Da: (From:)

Oggetto: (Subject:)

caro/a dear

scrivimi presto
write soon

saluti regards
baci kisses

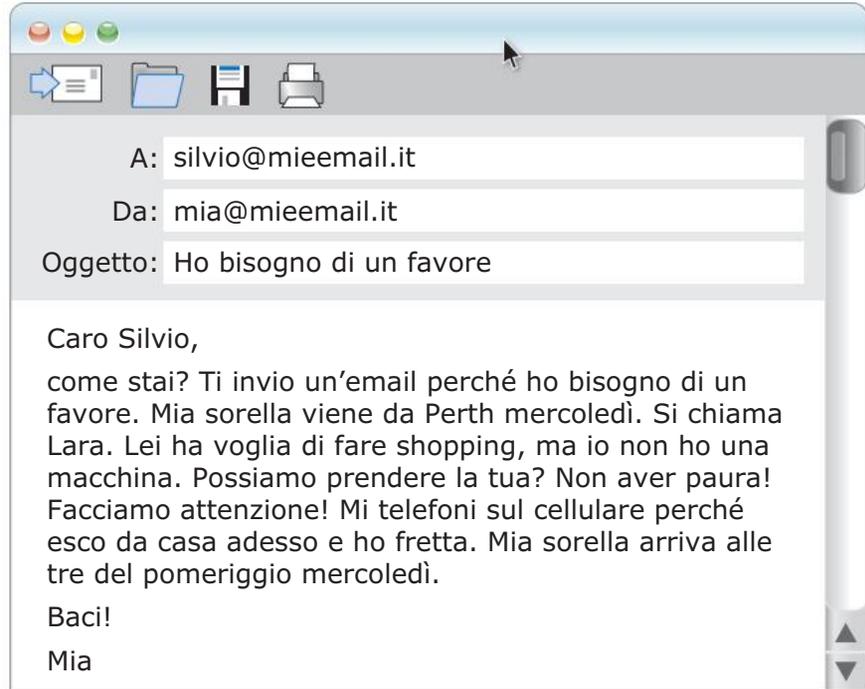
Cosa pensi ?

What do you think about communication technologies? Which device/format (phone, email, online chatting etc.) do you prefer to use to communicate with family and friends? Do you think this type of technology is more important to younger people than older people? Why or why not?

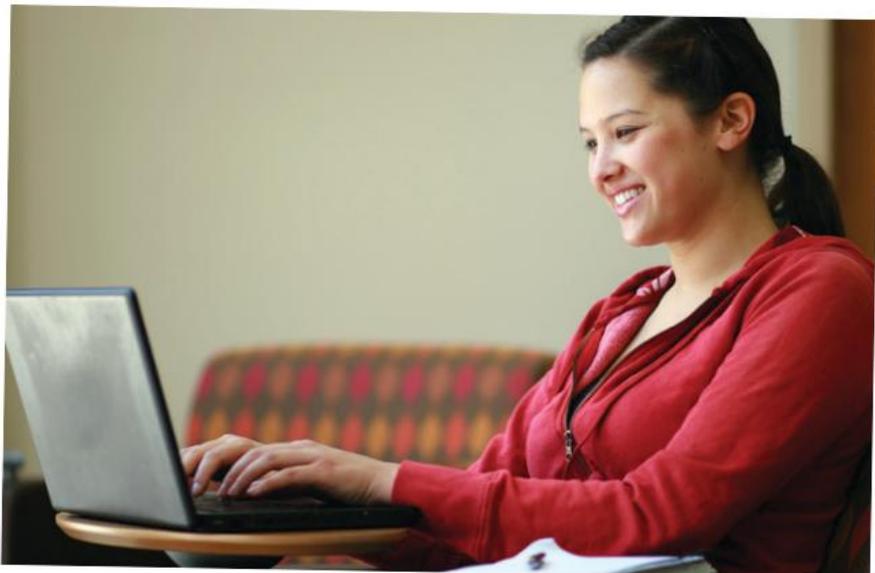


Attività 2.4

Read the email and answer the questions that follow, in Italian, in your exercise book.



- 1 Chi scrive l'email?
- 2 Perché scrive l'email?
- 3 Come si chiama sua sorella?
- 4 Cosa ha voglia di fare sua sorella?
- 5 Che cosa chiede Mia a Silvio?
- 6 Quando arriva la sorella di Mia?



Ripasso

- 1 Copy the table into your exercise book and match the Italian preposition with its English translation by drawing a line between the two.

da	at/to
a	in
con	of
per	from/by
in	for
di	with

- 2 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a I come to school on that train.
- b You (plural) go out with those cousins.
- c You (singular) don't say 'goodbye'.
- d I say that I am sleepy.
- e Zoe and I come from London.
- f Miriam and Phillip go out with their friends.
- g Joe tells his friend that he is buying that T-shirt.
- h They say that they are thirsty.

- 3 Match these Italian sentences with their English translations. Write the corresponding letter of each Italian sentence in the boxes beside the English translations.

- a Avete fame? They are thirsty because they are doing athletics.
- b Loro hanno sete perché fanno atletica. Dear me! We are cold!
- c Quando ho caldo, vado in piscina. You have to sleep. It's 10.00 p.m. and you're sleepy.
- d Mamma mia! Abbiamo freddo! Are you (plural) hungry?
- e Devi dormire. Sono le ventidue e hai sonno. They are wrong, it's seven thirty.
- f Hanno torto, sono le sette e mezza. When I'm hot, I go to the swimming pool.

- 4 Translate the following expressions into their Italian equivalents. Then, with a partner, take it in turns to say them to each other in Italian. Be dramatic!

- a Oh my gosh!
- b Good luck!
- c Cool!
- d About time!
- e I'm starving!
- f You're great!

- 5 With a partner, create an Italian telephone conversation lasting about a minute in length. Use the verbs **dire**, **venire** and **uscire** as often as you can.

- 6 Write a short email to a friend asking if he/she would like to go out on Saturday night. Ask them to arrive at a meeting point (at home, in the town centre etc.) at 7.00 p.m. and to tell you if they can come by Tuesday afternoon.

Look back at the examples of emails in this chapter for help with phrases and vocabulary.

Riassunto

Now you can:

use the irregular verbs **dire**, **venire** and **uscire**

	dire	to say/to tell
singular	(io) dico (tu) dici (lui/lei) dice	I say/tell you say/tell he/she/it says/tells
plural	(noi) diciamo (voi) dite (loro) dicono	we say/tell you say/tell they say/tell

	venire	to come
singular	(io) vengo (tu) vieni (lui/lei) viene	I come you come he/she/it comes
plural	(noi) veniamo (voi) venite (loro) vengono	we come you come they come

	uscire	to go out
singular	(io) esco (tu) esci (lui/lei) esce	I go out you go out he/she/it goes out
plural	(noi) usciamo (voi) uscite (loro) escono	we go out you go out they go out

use the prepositions **da**, **di**, **in**, **a**, **con** and **per**

da	from/by
di	of
in	in
a	at/to
con	with
per	for

use some common Italian expressions

Accidenti!	Damn!/Oh my gosh!
In bocca al lupo!	Break a leg!/Good luck!
Crepi!	Thanks! (Only in response to In bocca al lupo!)
Era ora!	About time!
Fico!	Cool!
Ho una fame da lupo!	I'm starving!
Mamma mia!	Dear me!
Mi piace da morire!	I'm mad about him/her/it!
Non ci ho visto più.	I lost my temper.
Non m'importa.	I don't care.
Non vedo l'ora di (+ infinitive)...	I can't wait until ...
Sei forte!	You're great!
Sono nei guai.	I'm in a pickle.
Quando il gatto non c'è i topi ballano.	When the cat is away the mice will play.

use the various forms of the adjective **quello**

Masculine			Feminine		
Singular	Plural	Use	Singular	Plural	Use
quel	quei	Used before nouns beginning with a consonant (e.g. quel ragazzo , quei ragazzi)	quella	quelle	Used before nouns beginning with a consonant (e.g. quella ragazza , quelle ragazze)
quell'	quegli	Used before nouns beginning with a vowel (e.g. quell'amico , quegli amici)	quell'	quelle	Used before nouns beginning with a vowel (e.g. quell'amica , quelle amiche)
quello	quegli	Used before nouns beginning with z or s plus a consonant— st , sp , sc , sn etc. (e.g. quello sport , quegli sport)			

Volete ascoltare la musica?

You will learn how to:

- talk about the weather
- ask for and give the date
- use the verbs **potere** and **volere**
- offer, accept and decline invitations
- talk about music and use the verb **suonare**
- use conjunctions and interrogatives to make you sound more fluent.



Vasco Rossi



Laura Pausini

Andiamo al festival



The **Atletitalia** competition winners are hanging out in a Roman **piazza** when a poster for a music event sparks their interest. Melanie's host brother from **Genova**, Paolo, has come to **Roma** to visit the group.



Guardate ragazzi!
È un poster per un
festival di musica!

Che bello! Mi
piace molto
la musica.

Anche a
me. Quando
è questo
festival?

1

Ragazzi, che
giorno è oggi?

È il primo maggio... E già!
Oggi è la festa del lavoro! C'è il
concerto gratis in Piazza San
Giovanni.

Ma allora è stasera! Voglio andare a
questo concerto. Melanie, tu vuoi venire?

Ma certo, canta Tiziano Ferro. È proprio stupendo! È
meraviglioso! Jessica, vuoi venire anche tu?

2

3

Sì, voglio venire, ma non posso. Stasera sono occupata.
Devo uscire con la famiglia che mi ospita. Mi dispiace.

Ragazzi, sapete che
questo è un concerto
importante. Adesso
mando un SMS.
Forse vuole venire
anche la famiglia.
Loro s'interessano di
progetti ambientali.

Gli artisti suonano per raccogliere
offerte per aiutare l'ambiente.

4

5

Ottima idea, Jessica! Melanie, vuoi venire a casa mia adesso?

Mi dispiace Stephen, ma non posso. Voglio prepararmi per il concerto. È all'aperto, vero? Che tempo fa stasera? Piove? Fa freddo?

Non credo. Secondo le previsioni del tempo sul mio telefonino fa bel tempo.

6

Ma Melanie, è un concerto per l'ambiente, non è una sfilata di moda.

Ascolta Paolo, se mi vede Tiziano voglio essere alla moda ed elegante.

7

Va bene. Allora ragazzi, ci incontriamo stasera verso le cinque davanti al Bar Michelangelo?

Va bene. A stasera allora. Ciao ragazzi!

8

A più tardi! Ognuno deve fare la sua parte per l'ambiente!

ABC Glossario

nomi

l'ambiente

the environment

gli artisti

the (music) artists

la festa del lavoro

Labour Day

il festival di musica

the music festival

le offerte

the donations

le previsioni del tempo

the weather forecast

i progetti

the projects

la sfilata di moda

the fashion show

la terra

the Earth, the ground

aggettivi

ambientale

environmental

elegante

elegant

importante

important

meraviglioso/a

wonderful, marvellous

salvo/a

safe, unharmed





Cosa pensi?

- 1 Look at the poster advertising the music festival in the cartoon story. What do you think the saying '**Per una terra sana e salva**' means?
- 2 Jessica says that her host family is very interested in environmental issues. Are you interested in environmental issues too? What do you do in your everyday life to help protect the environment?

sano/a sound, healthy
stupendo/a splendid, terrific
vero/a true

avverbi

davanti (a) in front (of)
gratis free
proprio really
stasera this evening, tonight

verbi

aiutare to help/to assist
non credo I don't believe so (from **credere**—to believe)
essere alla moda to be in fashion
guardate you (plural) look (from **guardare**—to look/to watch)
non posso I can't (from **potere**—to be able to)
prepararmi I prepare myself/I get myself ready (from **prepararsi**—to prepare oneself)
raccogliere to collect
sapete you (plural) know (from **sapere**—to know [a fact])
s'interessano di they are interested in (from **interessarsi**—to be interested in)
suonano they play (a musical instrument) (from **suonare**—to play)

altre espressioni e parole

all'aperto in the open (air)
anche a me me too
che bello! how lovely!
che tempo fa? what's the weather like?
e già! of course!
fa bel tempo it's nice weather
fa freddo? is it cold?
mi dispiace I'm sorry
ognuno deve fare la sua parte everyone must do their part
piove? is it raining?
sono occupato/a I'm busy
verso around

Attività 3.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|
| 1 | The music festival is being held on 1 May. | V | F |
| 2 | Melanie thinks that Tiziano Ferro is a wonderful singer. | V | F |
| 3 | Jessica wants to go to the concert because it is for a good cause. | V | F |
| 4 | Paolo wants to be fashionably dressed for the concert. | V | F |
| 5 | Stephen says they should meet behind Bar Michelangelo. | V | F |



Investigazione Linguistica



Che tempo fa?

Did you notice that in the cartoon story Melanie and Nathan were talking about what the weather would be like at the concert? Talking about the weather is a good icebreaker that you can use anywhere and in many conversations.

To ask what the weather is like in Italian, use the question:

Che tempo fa? (What's the weather like?) Here are some ways to describe the weather in Italian.



Fa bel tempo. It's nice weather.

Fa caldo. It's hot.

C'è il sole. It's sunny.



Fa brutto tempo. It's terrible weather.

Fa freddo. It's cold.



C'è vento. It's windy.



Piove. It's raining.



Neve. It's snowing.

Che tempo fa stasera?
Piove? Fa freddo?



Handy hint

Remember, the word **tempo** is not only used in reference to the weather; it is also used to describe time (e.g. **È tempo di andare a casa!**).



Neve a Milano.





Piove a Genova.

When talking about the weather it is also useful to know **le stagioni** (the seasons) in Italian:

- l'estate** (f) summer
- l'autunno** autumn
- l'inverno** winter
- la primavera** spring

You can use **le stagioni** as extra vocabulary to spice up your conversations about the weather.

Esempio **Fa brutto tempo quest'inverno. Non mi piace quando piove e c'è vento.**



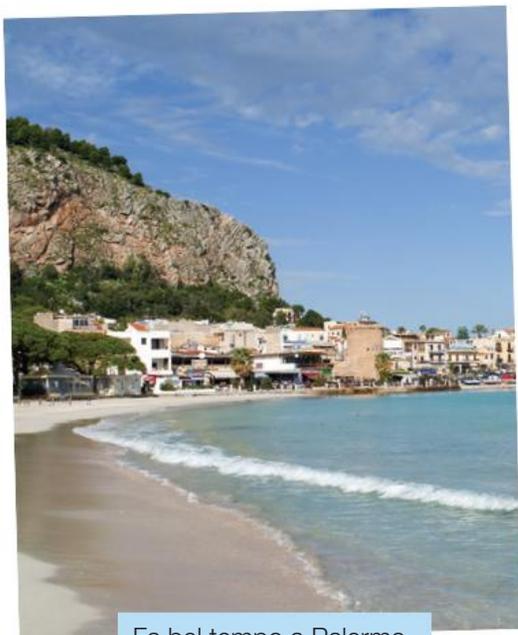
Tocca a te!

Write a weather report, in Italian, for the week to come in your home city/town to present to the class. Remember to include a description of the weather for each day. You can make up your forecasts. Be sure to deliver your report in true weather-presenter style!

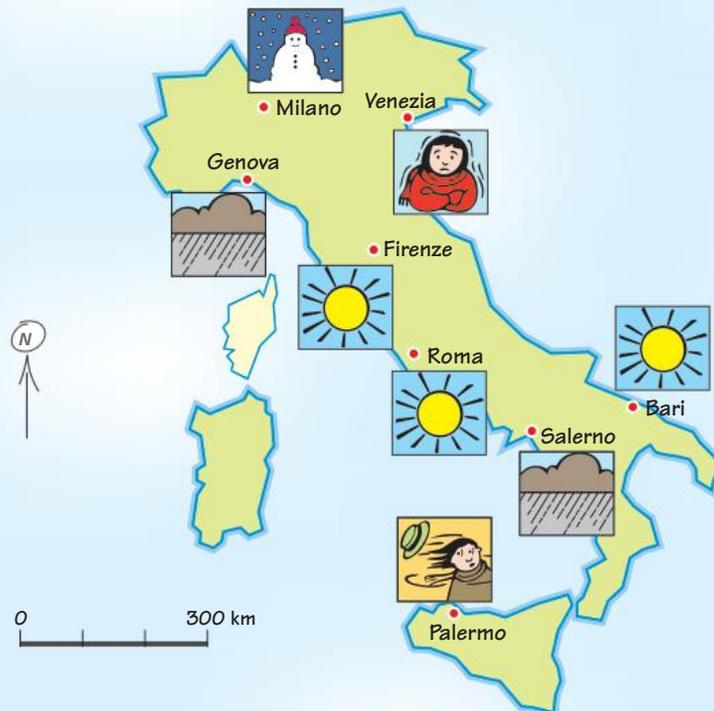
Attività 3.2

Look at the weather map of Italy below and with a partner, take turns to say what the weather forecast is for each city.

Esempio **A Milano nevicata. Fa freddo!**



Fa bel tempo a Palermo.





Investigazione Linguistica

Che giorno è? (What's the date?)

Knowing how to talk about dates is an important skill, especially if you are organising to meet someone on a day in the near future. To say the date in Italian, you simply use the number of the day preceded by the definite article **il** or **l'**, followed by the month of the year you are referring to.

Esempi **Oggi è il tredici agosto.** Today is the thirteenth of August.
Il mio compleanno è il due novembre. My birthday is the second of November.

For the eighth and eleventh day of any month, use **l'** because **otto** and **undici** begin with a vowel.

Esempi **Oggi è l'otto giugno.** Today is the eighth of June.
Domani è l'undici settembre. Tomorrow is the eleventh of September.

For the first day of the month, use **il primo**.

Esempio **Domani è il primo aprile.** Tomorrow is the first of April.

Handy hint

Remember, the days of the week and the months of the year are not written with capital letters in Italian. This is because only proper nouns (names of people and places) and words that start a sentence are capitalised in Italian.



Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns to ask and answer the questions below.

Esempio **A:** Che giorno è oggi?
B: Oggi è il ventotto febbraio.

- 1 Che giorno è oggi?
- 2 Che giorno è domani?
- 3 Che giorno è domenica?
- 4 Che giorno è l'ultimo giorno del mese?

Handy hint

Do you remember what the months of the year are in Italian? Below they are written out of order in Italian only. Use the language skills you have learnt so far to look for cognates and to figure out which month is which.

gennaio	giugno
febbraio	settembre
maggio	marzo
aprile	dicembre
agosto	ottobre
luglio	novembre

Attività 3.3



Listen to the audio and number the dates below in the order that you hear them. The first one has been done for you.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 il tredici marzo | <input type="checkbox"/> l'undici dicembre |
| <input type="checkbox"/> il dieci febbraio | <input type="checkbox"/> il primo novembre |
| <input type="checkbox"/> l'otto agosto | <input type="checkbox"/> il venticinque giugno |



Feste italiane

Every country has special **feste** (holidays) on its calendar that reflect important moments in history.

In Italy, **il sei gennaio**, known as **la festa della Befana**, is almost as important as **il giorno di Natale** (Christmas Day) for young children. Legend has it that **la Befana** (an old woman) brings **regali** (presents) to the good children and **carbone** (coal) to the naughty children. In Italy, **la Befana** is almost as popular as **Babbo Natale** (Santa Claus).

La festa della donna (International Women's Day) is celebrated on **l'otto marzo** in Italy and all over the world. On this day, Italian men give flowers, traditionally mimosas, to their girlfriends and wives.

Il diciannove marzo is the day that Italians celebrate **la festa di San Giuseppe** (Saint Joseph's feast day). On this day, many families cook traditional treats like **le zeppole**, a type of doughnut. This day is also celebrated as **la festa del papà** (Father's Day) in Italy.

Il venticinque aprile is a national holiday when Italians celebrate **la festa della Liberazione** (Liberation Day), which marks the end of the Second World War in 1945.

The first great festival of the warmer months in Italy takes place on **il primo maggio**. This national holiday is known as **la festa del lavoro** (Labour Day) and the highlight of the day is the free open-air music concert held in Rome's **Piazza San Giovanni**.

L'onomastico

If you look at an Italian calendar, you will notice that many days correspond to a person's name. Your **onomastico** is your name day. It is almost like a second birthday. So, for example, if your name is Maria, your **onomastico** would be **il primo gennaio**, and if your name is Giacomo (James or Jack), yours would be **il tre maggio**.

Cosa pensi ?

What **feste** do you celebrate at home that are as important to you and your society as they are to Italians? You would have noticed that Italians celebrate **la festa della Liberazione** on the same day that Australians celebrate Anzac Day. Do you think these dates have anything in common?

Attività 3.4



In addition to the dates already mentioned, there are many more festivals and celebrations that take place throughout the year in Italy. Use the Internet and other library resources (with help from your teacher) to create a large class calendar with the dates, descriptions and images of some important Italian events. Here are a few significant dates to get you started.

- Capodanno** (New Year's Day) 1 January
- Ferragosto** (Feast of the Assumption) 15 August
- Ognissanti** (All Saints' Day) 1 November



la Befana



le zeppole



Modal verbs: potere and volere

When you need to accept or refuse an invitation in Italian, it is most likely that you will use one of the modal verbs: **dovere**, **potere** or **volere**. Remember, you have already learnt about **dovere** in Chapter 1.

Modal verbs are very handy to know because they can help you express what you *have to*, *can* or *want* to do. In English, we often use 'have to' or 'must' (obligation or requirement), 'should' (recommendation), 'can/could' (ability, possibility, permission) and 'may/might' (possibility or permission). **Potere** and **volere** are the Italian equivalents of expressing what you can/are *able* to do and *want* to do.

Potere

	potere	to be able to
singular	(io) posso	I am able to
	(tu) puoi	you are able to
	(lui/lei) può	he/she/it is able to
plural	(noi) possiamo	we are able to
	(voi) potete	you are able to
	(loro) possono	they are able to

Volere

	volere	to want to
singular	(io) voglio	I want to
	(tu) vuoi	you want to
	(lui/lei) vuole	he/she/it wants to
plural	(noi) vogliamo	we want to
	(voi) volete	you want to
	(loro) vogliono	they want to

Remember, modal verbs are followed by another verb in the infinitive.

Esempi Possiamo uscire stasera.

We can/are able to go out tonight.

Volete dire qualcosa?

Do you (plural) want to say something?

To make them negative, simply put **non** in front of the modal verb.

Esempi Non posso giocare a tennis oggi.

I can't/am unable to play tennis today.

Non voglio suonare il violino.

I don't want to play the violin.

Sì, voglio venire, ma non posso.



Handy hint

The conjugations for the verbs **potere** and **volere** are irregular, so you'll have to learn them by heart if you want to be able to use them properly. What other irregular verbs do you know?

Attività 3.5

Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- 1 You want to play soccer.
- 2 She doesn't want to go to school.
- 3 We can go out on Friday.
- 4 They can't say my name.
- 5 You (plural) want to go to the concert.
- 6 I don't want to study today. I can study tomorrow!

Attività 3.6



Listen to the audio and identify the modal verb used in each sentence. Then translate the sentences into English in your exercise book.



Investigazione Linguistica



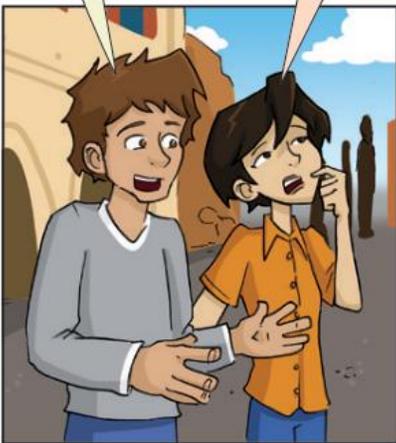
Offer, accept and decline invitations

You can see from the examples of festivals and holidays mentioned in the chapter that Italians, just like Australians, like to go out and celebrate important dates. Below is a list of common phrases that you can use to invite someone somewhere, and to accept or decline invitations.

Italian expression	English translation
Vuoi...con me?	Do you want to ... with me?
...andare al cinema...	... go to the movies ...
...andare alla festa...	... go to the party ...
...andare in spiaggia...	... go to the beach ...
...andare al concerto...	... go to the concert ...
...andare alla partita...	... go to the game ...
Sì, voglio andare/venire con te.	Yes, I want to go/come with you.
Non posso andare/venire con te.	I can't go/come with you.
Mi dispiace, ma...	I'm sorry, but ...
...sono occupato/a.	... I'm busy.
...sono stanco/a.	... I'm tired.
...sto male.	... I'm sick.
...devo fare i compiti.	... I have homework to do.
...devo lavarmi i capelli.	... I have to wash my hair.

Melanie,
vuoi venire
a casa mia
adesso?

Mi dispiace
Stephen, ma non
posso. Voglio
prepararmi per il
concerto.





Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns inviting each other out in Italian. You could be going to a party, to the movies, playing soccer etc. Accept or decline the invitations, giving good reasons for your answers. You can use the list on page 46 to help you. Can you devise some of your own invitations and responses?

Esempio A: Vuoi andare a pescare con me?

Do you want to go fishing with me?

B: Mi dispiace, ma non posso. Non mi piace l'odore del pesce.

I'm sorry, but I can't. I don't like the smell of fish.



Investigazione Culturale



La musica italiana

Italy has a proud tradition when it comes to music. Not only has Italy produced some longstanding traditional forms of folk music and dance, but it also enabled the birth and development of opera in the late sixteenth century.

If you study music, you will find that most of the notation is in Italian. Expressions such as **allegro** (fast tempo) **andante** (moderately slowly and evenly), **piano** (softly) and **sotto voce** (low tones) are directions on how to play the written music.

You might be familiar with some famous Italian songs such as '**Volare**', '**O sole mio**' and '**Nessun dorma**', which over the years have been re-made and sung by many musicians, not just Italians. Luciano Pavarotti, an internationally recognised Italian opera tenor, was famous for his fine voice and rendition of '**Nessun dorma**'.



Un concerto d'opera italiano con Luciano Pavarotti

Cosa pensi ?

Many European songwriters and performers, not just Italians, write and perform more and more of their music in English rather than their native language. Why do you think this is? Do you think this is a good thing or a bad thing?

Cosa pensi ?

Explore the Internet to research modern Italian artists and bands. Compare their music with the music you like to listen to. Is it similar? Do you like it? Can you understand the words? Now share your favourite Italian tunes with your classmates and friends!

Traditional folk music is also a large part of Italy's musical roots. Folk music is born from local influences, which means that there isn't solely one recognisable style; there are many types that are characteristic of different Italian regions.

La tarantella, for example, is a fast paced southern Italian group dance you will often see performed at celebrations in southern Italy. It is believed that **la tarantella** is linked with a disease from the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries called tarantism—a condition that reportedly caused hysteria in people if they were bitten by a tarantula spider. Victims were supposedly cured of the disease by frenetic dancing.

Italy also organises and hosts well-known music festivals including **il Festival di Sanremo** and **il Festivalbar**, which have launched the careers of some Italian singers and songwriters like Giorgia, Laura Pausini, Eros Ramazzotti, Vasco Rossi, Zucchero and, more recently, Tiziano Ferro, Elisa and Anna Tatangelo.



Tiziano Ferro



Anna Tatangelo

Handy hint

Don't confuse **suonare** and **giocare (a)**. They both mean 'to play' in Italian, but **suonare** means to play a musical instrument whereas **giocare (a)** means to play a sport, a game or with a toy.



Investigazione Linguistica

Suonare

Suonare means 'to play' in Italian and you can use it for references to musical instruments.

Esempio **Io suono la chitarra acustica.**

I play the acoustic guitar.

Parliamo di musica

Let's talk about music

Here are lists of Italian words for music related terms, different types of music and musical instruments.

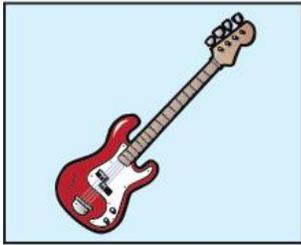
Termini musicali

il/la cantante	the singer (<i>m/f</i>)
la canzone	the song
il/la DJ	the DJ (<i>m/f</i>)
il gruppo	the band
la melodia	the melody
il/la musicista	the musician (<i>m/f</i>)
le parole	the lyrics
il ritmo	the rhythm
lo strumento	the musical instrument
il tempo	the tempo, the beat

Tipi di musica

la musica classica	classical music
la musica elettronica	electronic music
la musica jazz	jazz music
la musica pop	pop music
la musica rap	rap music
la musica rock	rock music

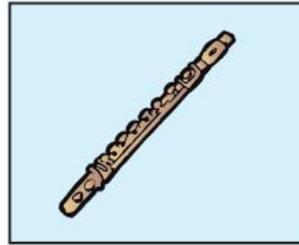
Gli strumenti musicali



il basso
the bass guitar



la chitarra acustica
the acoustic guitar



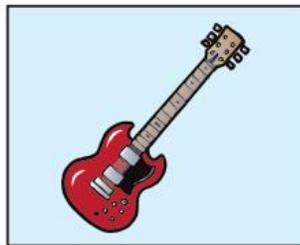
il flauto
the flute



i piatti
the turntable



la batteria
the drums



la chitarra elettrica
the electric guitar



il pianoforte
the piano



il sassofono
the saxophone



la tastiera
the keyboard



la tromba
the trumpet



il violino
the violin

Attività 3.7

Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 I play the drums. | 4 Jay, do you play the saxophone? |
| 2 We don't play the trumpet. | 5 Beck plays the flute. |
| 3 John and Sara play the piano. | 6 Jason and I play the violin. |

Attività 3.8

Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

A Che tipo di musica ti piace?

B	la musica pop. la musica elettronica. la musica rock.
Mi piace	

A	la musica pop? la musica elettronica? la musica rock?
Perché ti piace	

B	la melodia di questa musica. il ritmo di questa musica. le parole delle canzoni di questa musica.	Suoni uno strumento?
Mi piace Mi piacciono		

A	il flauto. la tromba. la chitarra elettrica. la tastiera.	E tu? Suoni uno strumento?
Sì, No,	suono ma voglio suonare	

B	il basso. il pianoforte. il sassofono. la batteria.
Sì, No,	suono però mio papà suona



Tocca a te!

As a class, set aside some time in a lesson to conduct a class survey, in Italian, about music. Use the questions below to help you. Record your results in Italian, detailing the people you surveyed and their answers. Collate everyone's results to find out the most popular response in your class.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Ti piace la musica? | 4 Qual è il tuo gruppo preferito? |
| 2 Che tipo di musica ti piace? | 5 Suoni uno strumento? Quale? |
| 3 Chi è il tuo cantante preferito? | 6 Ti piace cantare? |



Conjunctions

Look at Paolo and Melanie's chat room dialogue below.



Melanie: Paolo, suoni uno strumento **oppure** no?



Paolo: Sì, suono la batteria con il gruppo di mio cugino, **ma** voglio **anche** suonare la chitarra elettrica **perché** è uno strumento molto popolare **e quindi** posso essere famoso.

Notice how Paolo's response to Melanie's question is detailed and flows well through the use of the words in bold. To help you improve your writing and speaking skills, use these handy little words to link your sentences. They are known as 'conjunctions', or 'joining words'.

allora	in that case, then	oppure	or, otherwise
anche	also	perché	because
e	and	perciò	so
ma	but	però	however
o	or	quindi	therefore, so, well then

Handy hint

Remember that **perché** means 'because'. It also means 'why?' You should be able to tell which meaning is intended by the context of the word within the sentence and the punctuation.

Attività 3.4

Complete the sentences with an appropriate conjunction. You may be able to use more than one conjunction for certain sentences, so try to use a variety in your answers if possible.

- 1 Vorrei uscire con te stasera, _____ non posso venire.
- 2 Jesse, non puoi uscire _____ deve fare i compiti.
- 3 Rafael _____ Rosie vogliono mangiare.
- 4 Fa bel tempo, _____ voglio andare a giocare a calcio.
- 5 Piove, _____ devo stare a casa.
- 6 Samantha vuole comprare i jeans blu _____ la gonna nera.



Interrogatives

A great way to figure out what people are asking you in Italian is by becoming familiar with words that usually start a question—these are known as ‘interrogatives’. Learn and practise saying the below list of interrogatives. They will help you become quite a conversationalist!

che cosa (che cos'è/che cosa sono)	what (what is/what are)
chi	who
come	how
dove (dov'è/dove sono)	where (where is/where are)
perché	why
quale/quali (qual è/quali sono)	which (which is/which are)
quando	when
quanto/a/i/e	how many

Handy hint

Quale becomes **qual** when followed by a vowel. (e.g. **Qual è...**)



Attività 3.10

Complete the sentences with an appropriate interrogative. You may be able to use more than one interrogative for some sentences, so try to use a variety in your answers if possible.

- _____ anni ha tuo fratello?
- _____ è quel ragazzo simpatico?
- Devo essere più forte. _____ la palestra?
- _____ vieni a casa mia? Alle tre e mezza o alle quattro di pomeriggio?
- _____ non può suonare il flauto?
- _____ fai domani?

Ripasso

- 1 You are planning a small outdoor concert at school to raise money **per aiutare l'ambiente**. Read the weather forecast for the week ahead and decide which day is the best to hold the concert. Provide reasons for your choice.



lunedì

Fa caldo.
C'è il sole.



martedì

Fa bel tempo di mattina.
Nel pomeriggio, piove.



mercoledì

C'è il sole.
Fa molto caldo.



giovedì

Fa freddo e c'è vento.



venerdì

Fa bel tempo.



sabato

Fa brutto tempo.



domenica

Piove. Non fa molto freddo.

- 2 Copy the table into your exercise book and, in Italian, write the dates for the list of holidays and celebrations. Then order them chronologically. The first date has been written for you as an example.

	Holiday/celebration	Date	Order
1	il giorno di Natale	il venticinque dicembre	
2	la festa del lavoro		
3	la festa della donna		
4	la festa della Befana		
5	la festa della Liberazione		
6	la festa di San Giuseppe		

- 3 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a Do you want to go out on Saturday night?
- b I want to go to the concert, but I can't.
- c I like classical music, but I prefer pop music.
- d Laura plays the piano and the acoustic guitar.
- e Do you play an instrument?
- f Do you (plural) want to go to the beach tomorrow?

- 4 In pairs, prepare a question and answer dialogue based on the following scenario:

Your friend invites you out often. You would like to go out with him/her, but you can't. Decline your friend's invitations, providing good reasons with your responses.

When you finish, swap roles with your partner. You could use the below invitation examples as a starting point.

- **Vuoi andare in spiaggia questo pomeriggio?**
- **C'è un concerto in piazza stasera. Puoi venire con me?**

Riassunto

Now you can:

ask for and give the date

Che giorno è?	What's the date?
Oggi è il tredici agosto .	Today is the thirteenth of August.
Oggi è l'otto giugno .	Today is the eighth of June.
Oggi è l'undici settembre .	Today is the eleventh of September.
Oggi è il primo aprile .	Today is the first of April.

talk about the weather

Che tempo fa?	What's the weather like?	Fa freddo.	It's cold.
Fa bel tempo.	It's nice weather.	C'è vento.	It's windy.
Fa caldo.	It's hot.	Piove.	It's raining.
C'è il sole.	It's sunny.	Nevica.	It's snowing.
Fa brutto tempo.	It's terrible weather.		

use the verbs potere and volere

	potere	to be able to
singular	(io) posso (tu) puoi (lui/lei) può	I am able to you are able to he/she/it is able to
plural	(noi) possiamo (voi) potete (loro) possono	we are able to you are able to they are able to

	volere	to want to
singular	(io) voglio (tu) vuoi (lui/lei) vuole	I want to you want to he/she/it wants to
plural	(noi) vogliamo (voi) volete (loro) vogliono	we want to you want to they want to

talk about music and use the verb suonare

il basso	the bass guitar	il sassofono	the saxophone
la batteria	the drums	la tastiera	the keyboard
la chitarra acustica	the acoustic guitar	la tromba	the trumpet
la chitarra elettrica	the electric guitar	il violino	the violin
il flauto	the flute		
il pianoforte	the piano	Io suono la chitarra acustica.	I play the acoustic guitar.
i piatti	the turntable		

use conjunctions and interrogatives to make you sound more fluent

Conjunctions

allora	in that case, then
anche	also
e	and
ma	but
o	or
oppure	or, otherwise
perché	because
perciò	so
però	however
quindi	therefore, so, well then

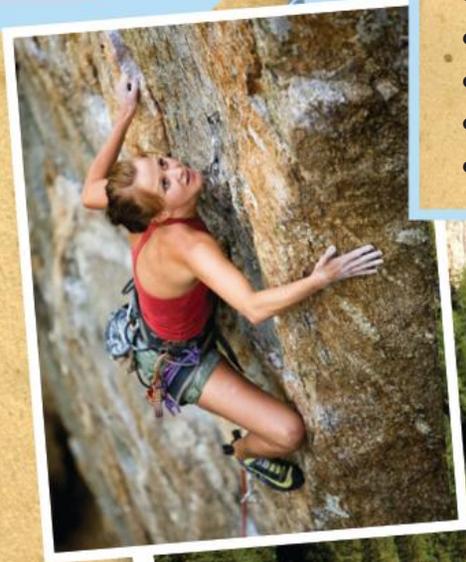
Interrogatives

che cosa (che cos'è/che cosa sono)	what (what is/what are)
chi	who
come	how
dove (dov'è/dove sono)	where (where is/where are)
perché	why
quale/quali (qual è/quali sono)	which (which is/which are)
quando	when
quanto/a/i/e	how many

Salviamo la terra!

You will learn how to:

- use the verbs **sapere**, **conoscere**, **dare** and **preferire**
- talk about the environment and ecotourism
- compare different things, qualities and actions
- use articulated prepositions
- identify and discuss extreme sports
- use Italian gestures as linguistic short cuts.



Il campeggio dei gladiatori



While visiting **Roma**, Paolo accompanies the Australian students on a visit to a travel agency, where they are looking for information about different sports they could try on a trip to the **Toscana** region.

1 Ragazzi, guardate cosa possiamo fare al campeggio dei gladiatori. Ci sono moltissimi sport, e anche gli sport estremi! Possiamo fare arrampicata, parapendio, windsurf... Favoloso!

Bel divertimento! Dove si trova questo campeggio?

È sull'Isola d'Elba. L'isola fa parte del Parco Nazionale dell'Arcipelago Toscano.

Non conosco quest'isola. È lontana?

Ma sei pazzo! Non voglio fare surf nell'acqua fredda! Soltanto se fa molto caldo...

2 Ma no, non è più di un'ora da Piombino in Toscana. Prendete il traghetto e arrivate! Fa sempre bel tempo sull'isola. Potete fare surf nel mare!

Ma non capisco perché dobbiamo fare gli sport estremi. A che cosa servono? Non voglio farmi male.

3

Gli sport estremi sono molto popolari. Aiutano le persone a diventare più forti, proprio come una squadra di gladiatori! Comunque al campeggio possiamo anche giocare a tennis, a calcio, a golf... E possiamo esplorare la natura.

4

Ma per favore! Non mi va di essere un gladiatore. Conosci il film? Portano la gonna.

5



Non ti preoccupare, Stephen. Al campeggio ti danno una tuta sportiva. Puoi fare finta che fai parte della squadra di calcio nazionale!

6

Preferisco rimanere a casa e giocare ai videogiochi. È meno duro, sai. C'è un gioco dove devi scalare la montagna e fare surf...



7



Dai Stephen, al campeggio dei gladiatori puoi fare davvero queste cose.

Va bene, se dici che posso giocare a calcio... e se non devo portare la gonna!

8

ABC Glossario

nomi

l'arrampicata

rock climbing

il campeggio

the camp

i gladiatori

the gladiators

l'isola

the island

il mare

the sea

la montagna

the mountain

la natura

the nature

il parapendio

paragliding

il Parco Nazionale

the National Park of the Tuscan

dell'Arcipelago Toscano

Archipelago

le persone

the people

gli sport estremi

the extreme sports

la squadra

the team

il surf

surfing

la tuta sportiva

the tracksuit

il windsurf

windsurfing

aggettivi

duro/a

hard

lontano/a

far away

nazionale

national

popolare

popular



avverbi

comunque	in any case, anyway
davvero	really, indeed
meno	less
moltissimo/a/i/e	very much
soltanto (se)	only (if)

verbi

non capisco	I don't understand (from capire —to understand)
conosci	you know (from conoscere —to know [someone or something])
non conosco	I don't know (from conoscere —to know [someone or something])
ti danno	they give you (from dare —to give)
diventare	to become
esplorare	to explore
fare finta	to pretend
farmi male	to hurt myself (from farsi male —to hurt oneself)
nuotare	to swim
rimanere	to remain
sai	you know (from sapere —to know [a fact])
scalare	to climb

altre espressioni e parole

a che cosa servono?	what purpose do they serve?
bel divertimento!	what fun!
dai	come on
dove si trova...	where is (can you find) ...
fa parte di...	is part of ...
favoloso!	fabulous!
non mi va	I don't feel like (it)
non ti preoccupare	don't (you) worry
sei pazzo/a!	you're crazy!

Attività 4.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- | | | | |
|----------|--|----------|----------|
| 1 | Nathan thinks that extreme sports are fabulous. | V | F |
| 2 | Il campeggio dei gladiatori is on the island of Sicily. | V | F |
| 3 | The camp is hours away. | V | F |
| 4 | The students can travel to the camp by train. | V | F |
| 5 | Paolo says the weather on the island is always nice. | V | F |
| 6 | Nathan thinks that extreme sports help people become popular. | V | F |
| 7 | The students can explore nature at the camp. | V | F |
| 8 | Stephen wants to take his video games to camp. | V | F |



Sapere and conoscere

Some new verbs were introduced in the cartoon story. Two of them both mean 'to know' in English: **sapere** and **conoscere**.

Sapere means 'to know a fact' or how to do something.

Esempi **Io so che il gatto è nero.** I know that the cat is black.
Io so la risposta. I know the answer.

Loro sanno suonare la tromba.
They know how to play the trumpet.

Conoscere means 'to be familiar with' or to 'know someone or something'.

Esempi **Io conosco tuo fratello.** I know your brother.
Io conosco bene il film. I know the film well.

Lui conosce il padre di Valerio.
He knows Valerio's father.

Sapere

	sapere	to know (a fact)
singular	(io) so (tu) sai (lui/lei) sa	I know (a fact) you know (a fact) he/she/it knows (a fact)
plural	(noi) sappiamo (voi) sapete (loro) sanno	we know (a fact) you know (a fact) they know (a fact)

Conoscere

	conoscere	to know (someone or something)
singular	(io) conosco (tu) conosci (lui/lei) conosce	I know (someone or something) you know (someone or something) he/she/it knows (someone or something)
plural	(noi) conosciamo (voi) conoscete (loro) conoscono	we know (someone or something) you know (someone or something) they know (someone or something)

You would also use the verb **conoscere** to say that you are familiar with a place.

Esempi **Conosco Roma.** I know (am familiar with) Rome.
Conosci la casa di Franca.
You know (are familiar with) Franca's house.

Ma per favore! Non mi va di essere un gladiatore. Conosci il film? Portano la gonna.





Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns to express that you know the below list of things/people using the verbs **sapere** and **conoscere**. You will need to conjugate the verbs in the **io** form.

Esempi **Conosco il film *Twilight*.** (il film *Twilight*)

So la formula di matematica. (la formula di matematica)

- 1 la madre di Sonia
- 2 la musica di Madonna
- 3 il giorno del mio onomastico
- 4 il tempo per venerdì
- 5 l'insegnante d'italiano
- 6 l'alfabeto italiano
- 7 i numeri romani
- 8 l'amico di mia sorella

Handy hint

The original fifteen member states of the European Union (in alphabetical order in Italian) were:

- l'**Austria** (Austria)
- il **Belgio** (Belgium)
- la **Danimarca** (Denmark)
- la **Finlandia** (Finland)
- la **Francia** (France)
- la **Germania** (Germany)
- la **Grecia** (Greece)
- l'**Irlanda** (Ireland)
- l'**Italia** (Italy)
- il **Lussemburgo** (Luxembourg)
- i **Paesi Bassi** (Netherlands)
- il **Portogallo** (Portugal)
- il **Regno Unito** (United Kingdom)
- la **Spagna** (Spain)
- la **Svezia** (Sweden)



Investigazione Culturale



L'ambiente in Europa

Like many people in Australia and around the world, Italians are becoming increasingly aware of environmental issues on a local and global scale.

Unlike Australia, however, Italy is part of the European Union. This means that Italy works towards a joint effort in lowering carbon emissions (the amount of carbon dioxide released into the air from pollutants) with other EU-15 member states. The EU-15 has a target to reduce carbon emissions by 8 per cent by 2012. Many EU-15 countries plan to cut down on carbon emissions by introducing 'carbon sinks'—like planting forests that absorb CO₂—to achieve the target.



Cosa pensi ?

Do you think it would be easier or more difficult to achieve lower carbon emissions as part of a large group of countries? Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of being part of this alliance and give reasons for your opinions.

Ragazzi, chi aiuta l'ambiente?

I ragazzi che hanno dai 14 ai 17 anni devono pensare al riscaldamento globale perché è un problema che ha effetti sulla loro vita futura. Molti ragazzi conoscono i problemi dell'ambiente, ma non fanno molto per aiutare l'ambiente.



Secondo una ricerca del 2008, di 600 ragazzi italiani tra i 14 e i 17 anni, solo il 37 per cento dei giovani si preoccupa dell'effetto serra e solo il 28 per cento si preoccupa dell'esaurimento delle fonti energetiche come il carbone,

il petrolio e la benzina naturale.

Come si può aiutare la terra? Tutti devono riciclare e consumare meno elettricità. Purtroppo, solo la metà dei ragazzi ricicla e meno della metà preferisce usare la bicicletta al motorino.

Solo il 19 per cento fa attenzione ai consumi elettrici. Oggi molti ragazzi usano il cellulare, il lettore MP3, i videogiochi e il computer, e ogni persona contribuisce all'impronta ecologica e al riscaldamento globale.

Ovviamente tutti insieme dobbiamo accettare le nostre responsabilità e aiutare la terra.

Handy hint

Even though the language in the article is a little bit difficult, remember to use the three rules to try to figure out what something means in Italian: look for the words you already know, look for cognates (words that look and sound like English words) and look for visual clues (if there are any). If you need to, use the wordlist at the back of the book to look up unfamiliar words.

Attività 4.2

How much did you understand in the article about young people and the environment? Answer these questions, in English, in your exercise book.

- 1 According to the article, what do 14- to 17-year-olds need to do with reference to global warming?
- 2 What do 37 per cent of Italian teenagers worry about?
- 3 What percentage of Italian teenagers claim to recycle?
- 4 What do only 19 per cent of Italian teenagers do to help the environment?
- 5 List some of the devices teenagers use that contribute to their carbon footprint.

Attività 4.3

How do the article findings compare with your class' attitudes to the environment? With your teacher's help, conduct a survey of your classmates in Italian. Use the modal verbs **dovere**, **potere** and **volere** to answer:

- 1 Cosa dobbiamo fare per aiutare l'ambiente?
- 2 Cosa possiamo fare per aiutare l'ambiente?
- 3 Cosa vuoi fare per aiutare l'ambiente?



Dobbiamo pensare all'effetto del riscaldamento globale.



L'ecoturismo

Italy is home to many spectacular geographical features, including idyllic countryside, majestic mountains and beautiful beaches.

Just like in Australia, the Italian government has taken steps to preserve and protect natural landscapes that are considered 'national treasures' by declaring them **parchi nazionali** (national parks). Many **turisti** (tourists) visit these areas every year and, as a consequence, **la conservazione della natura** (nature conservation) is very important to Italy's tourist industry and economy.

You read in the cartoon story that **Isola d'Elba** is part of **il Parco Nazionale dell'Arcipelago Toscano**. The island is located just off the coast of **Toscana**, an hour's ferry ride from the Italian coast, and is a very popular **destinazione turistica** (tourist destination) for people of all ages. **L'Isola d'Elba** offers visitors a variety of activities (for active and relaxed travellers) while also allowing people to explore **l'isola** and experience its natural beauty.

Other valued national parks that are favoured with tourists are **il Parco Nazionale d'Abruzzo**, **il Parco Nazionale del Vesuvio** in **Campania**, **l'Alta Murgia** in **Puglia** and **le Dolomiti** in **Veneto**.

L'ecoturismo (ecotourism) is a form of travel where people visit an area where the natural flora (plants) and fauna (animals) are the major attractions. **I turisti** are asked to try not to disrupt the natural environments of these areas so that they can be maintained for future visitors. The operators of ecotourism attractions usually encourage visitors to appreciate **l'ambiente** and they promote recycling, using energy efficiently and water conservation.

Italy is at the forefront of **l'ecoturismo** because its tourist trade is one of the biggest in the world. The Italians know that if they don't look after their treasured natural environments, they might not be around for future generations to admire.



il Parco Nazionale d'Abruzzo

Cosa pensi ?

Do you know of anything that your local community is doing to preserve and protect its natural environments for the future? Are you doing anything yourself, or would you like to?



il Parco Nazionale del Vesuvio

Attività 4.4



Conduct some research on the Internet to find out more about Italy's national parks. Based on your research, consider which you would most like to visit and why, and what time of the year would be best to visit this national park. Write your opinions and findings, in English, in your exercise book.



Investigazione Linguistica

Dare

Dare (to give) is an irregular verb because it doesn't follow the normal conjugation pattern of **-are** verbs.

	dare	to give
singular	(io) do (tu) dai (lui/lei) dà	I give you give he/she/it gives
plural	(noi) diamo (voi) date (loro) danno	we give you give they give

To say, 'I give (something) to someone', you would use 'To do + item + **a**'.

Esempi **Io do lo zaino a mia sorella.**

I give the backpack to my sister.

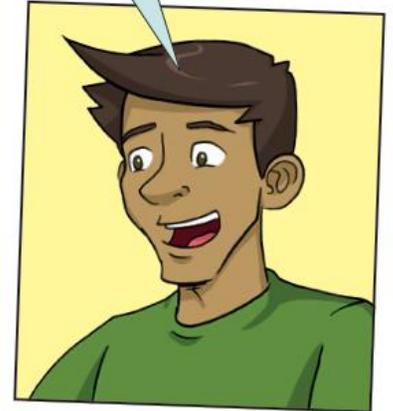
Voi date il libro a vostro padre.

You (plural) give the book to your father.

Xavier dà la palla a Cristiano.

Xavier gives the ball to Cristiano.

Al campeggio ti danno una tuta sportiva...



Attività 4.5

Complete these sentences with the correct form of **dare**. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- 1 Io _____ la tromba al mio amico.
- 2 Io e Helena _____ la sciarpa a mia madre.
- 3 Nunzio _____ i compiti alla professoressa.
- 4 Michele e Davide _____ €40,00 alla commessa.
- 5 Tu _____ il cellulare a tuo fratello.
- 6 Voi _____ il cane a Melissa.



Più o meno? (The comparative)

When you wish to compare one thing with another you use a grammatical structure known as the 'comparative'. Here are the forms you can use:

più... di/che... more ... than ...

meno... di/che... less ... than ...

Più and **meno** can be used with **di** or **che**. **Di** is used when comparing two different things (nouns), while **che** is used when the comparison is between two qualities (adjectives) of the same thing, or between two actions (verbs).

Esempi Il motocross è **più veloce del** canottaggio.

Motocross is faster than canoeing.

Il canottaggio è **più avventuroso che** pericoloso.

Canoeing is more adventurous than dangerous.

Penso **che studiare è più interessante che** guardare la TV.

I think that studying is more interesting than watching TV.



Attività 4.6

Show you understand how comparisons work in Italian by translating these sentences into English, in your exercise book.

- 1 Il motocross è meno divertente del windsurf.
- 2 Il calcio è più difficile che pericoloso.
- 3 L'arrampicata è più difficile del parapendio.
- 4 Giocare ai videogiochi è meno importante che aiutare l'ambiente.
- 5 L'Italia è molto più piccola dell'Australia.
- 6 Elena pensa che cantare è meno noioso che suonare il basso.



Remember, you learnt in Chapter 2 that prepositions (like **di**) are function words used in front of nouns to show the relationship to another word in the sentence.

Articulated prepositions

You will notice in a lot of phrases that use a combination of **più di** or **meno di** that the **di** appears as another word. These words are called 'articulated prepositions' (a preposition with a definite article attached). Some frequently used articulated prepositions are shown in the table that follows.

Preposition	Definite article						
	il	la	l'	lo	i	le	gli
a (at/to)	a + il = al	a + la = alla	a + l' = all'	a + lo = allo	a + i = ai	a + le = alle	a + gli = agli
da (from/by)	da + il = dal	da + la = dalla	da + l' = dall'	da + lo = dallo	da + i = dai	da + le = dalle	da + gli = dagli
di (of)	di + il = del	di + la = della	di + l' = dell'	di + lo = dello	di + i = dei	di + le = delle	di + gli = degli

Esempi **La vela è più divertente della pesca.**
Sailing is more fun than fishing.

L'educazione fisica è meno difficile delle scienze.
Physical education is less difficult than science.

Niente è più divertente del paracadutismooooooooooooooooooooo!

Attività 4.7



Listen carefully to the audio. Identify and make a note in your exercise book of the articulated preposition used in each sentence.

Esempio **Adele deve incontrare Michele alle due e venti.**
Articulated preposition = **alle**



Handy hint

When you use *possessive adjectives* with prepositions, what would normally be the definite article will become an articulated preposition. For example, **la mia amica** (my friend) would become **alla mia amica** (to my friend). How would you say 'from my friend' or 'of my friend/friend's'?



Gli sport estremi al campeggio dei gladiatori

Cosa pensi?

Do you think it is responsible for people to practise extreme sports? Which extreme sport, if any, would you like to try and why?

Apart from the advantage of exploring nature on l'Isola d'Elba, the Australian students are interested in **il campeggio dei gladiatori** because of the sports offered there, including extreme sports. Read the brochure below to find out which extreme sports feature at the camp.

Fai uno sport estremo al campeggio dei gladiatori!

l'alpinismo

il bungee jumping

il paracadutismo

il kayak

il mountain biking

il parapendio

il surf

il windsurf

l'arrampicata

kayaking



mountain biking

surfing windsurfing

mountain climbing

paragliding

bungee jumping

parachuting

rock climbing



Attività 4.8

Italy has many successful sportspeople. Read the short biography about Federica Pellegrini and answer the questions that follow, in English, in your exercise book.



FEDERICA PELLEGRINI è nata a Mirano, vicino Venezia, il cinque agosto 1988. Il suo segno zodiacale è il Leone. Pellegrini è una nuotatrice italiana e ha una medaglia d'oro per il nuoto ai giochi olimpici di Pechino nel 2008. Dopo Pechino, continua a vincere. Il suo soprannome è 'la Leonessa' e uno dei suoi film preferiti è *Il Re Leone*.

- 1 When was Federica Pellegrini born?
- 2 What is her zodiac sign?
- 3 Which sport is she famous for?
- 4 What colour medal did she win at the 2008 Olympics?
- 5 What is her nickname?

ABC Glossario

nomi

i giochi olimpici	the Olympics
la medaglia d'oro	the gold medal
il segno zodiacale	the zodiac sign
il soprannome	the nickname

verbo

è nata	she was born (from nascere —to be born)
---------------	--

altre espressioni e parole

continua a vincere	she continues to win
Leone	Leo (zodiac sign)
'la Leonessa'	'The Lioness' (nickname)
Pechino	Beijing



il cavallino rampante
(the prancing horse)

Cosa pensi ?

What do you think of car racing in light of the world's current environmental issues? Do you think it is enough for car manufacturers like Ferrari to develop new technologies to reduce carbon emissions?

La Ferrari

The Ferrari motor car company was founded in 1928 by Enzo Ferrari, an Italian racing car driver. The company started out as a racing car manufacturer, but later began producing street-legal sports cars in 1947, when the company set up its headquarters in Maranello, near Modena, in northern Italy. Ferrari cars are hand-built, which means that only a small number are produced each year—this makes them extra special and very expensive!

The story of the famous emblem of Ferrari—a prancing horse—dates back to an Italian First World War pilot named Francesco Baracca who died during the war. The war hero was said to have had a black prancing horse painted on the plane he was tragically shot down in. In 1923, at the completion of a race in Ravenna, Enzo met the pilot's family, who suggested to Enzo that he use the emblem to bring him good luck. So that's what he did! However, he added the yellow background to signify the **colore** of Modena.

L'automobilismo (motor racing) is a very popular sport in Italy. Italians follow the sport passionately, and support their **squadra** Ferrari in **Formula Uno** (Formula One) races around the world. Some of the world's most successful and famous racing car drivers have been part of the Ferrari team, including Michael Schumacher and Felipe Massa.

Today people from all corners of the globe admire Ferrari cars for their beauty and power. Soon Ferrari may also be regarded as being more environmentally friendly, as it and other sports car manufacturers develop hybrid technologies (combining two or more sources of power) to reduce fuel consumption and carbon emissions.



Una macchina di Formula Uno Ferrari



Preferire

You will have already come across the verb **preferire** (to prefer) in your earlier studies when talking about what type of things you prefer (or like).

	preferire	to prefer
singular	(io) preferisco (tu) preferisci (lui/lei) preferisce	I prefer you prefer he/she/it prefers
plural	(noi) preferiamo (voi) preferite (loro) preferiscono	we prefer you prefer they prefer

When you use **preferire** before another verb, to say that you prefer doing something, the other verb will always be in the infinitive.

Esempi Tu preferisci nuotare.

You prefer to swim.

Noi preferiamo fare ciclismo.

We prefer to cycle.

I ragazzi preferiscono giocare a football australiano.

The boys prefer to play Australian Rules football.



Preferisco rimanere a casa...



Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns asking and responding to the following questions in Italian.

Esempio **A:** Preferisci giocare a calcio o fare windsurf?

B: Preferisco giocare a calcio.

- 1 Preferisci giocare a golf o a cricket?
- 2 Preferisci fare surf o giocare a tennis?
- 3 Preferisci giocare a pallavolo o fare ciclismo?
- 4 Preferisci giocare a rugby o fare parapendio?
- 5 Preferisci fare atletica o kayak?
- 6 Preferisci giocare a netball o a pallacanestro?



The hands have it!

Hand gestures and signals are a language in themselves. For example, in sports, **gli arbitri** (the umpires), **i giocatori** (the players), and **gli allenatori** (the coaches) all have their own non-verbal way of talking to each other, whether it's signalling a free kick in **football australiano**, or doing a type of serve in **pallavolo**.

Sometimes Italians use hand gestures to emphasise an **espressione** and give it the strength that the word or phrase itself doesn't have. They don't always accompany the gestures with words; they may just indicate their meaning through body language.

It's important to be aware that certain hand gestures can have completely different interpretations in other cultures!

Here are some Italian gestures and their intended meanings in English.

Cosa pensi?

What are some hand gestures specific to your culture? Remember, culture doesn't have to be nationality; it can be determined by age, religion or language, just to name a few things.



Me ne frego!
(I couldn't care less!)



Perfetto!
(Perfect!)



Che barba!
(How boring!)



È un po' tocco/pazzo.
(He/she is a bit crazy.)



Tocca a te!

Individually, practise performing the gestures above. Say what they mean in Italian as you do this. Then, with a partner, silently perform each gesture. Your partner has to identify what you are trying to say. Swap roles so that you both have a chance to present and guess meanings. How good are your performance skills and how many gestures can you both get right?

Ripasso

1 Complete these sentences with the appropriate conjugation of the verb written in brackets. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a Noi _____ bene la città di Genova. (*conoscere*)
- b Leonie e Justin _____ fare windsurf? (*sapere*)
- c Sara _____ che oggi fa freddo. (*sapere*)
- d Io _____ tuo cugino. (*conoscere*)
- e Loro _____ fare ciclismo. (*preferire*)
- f Voi _____ il cellulare al professore. (*dare*)

2 Translate these comparative sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a Playing the drums is more fun than difficult.
- b Rugby is more interesting than cricket.
- c Sending a SMS is easier than writing an email.
- d My dog is more adventurous than intelligent.
- e The bathroom is smaller than the garage.
- f Studying history is less boring than playing sport.

3 Read the following paragraphs of people talking about the games they play. From the descriptions, identify what sport they participate in. (Use a dictionary or the wordlist at the back of the book to look up any unfamiliar words.)

a  **Luca:** Preferisco giocare con una squadra. Le mie partite sono in due parti e durano circa novanta minuti. L'arbitro è molto severo. La mia squadra ha una divisa. Usiamo una palla rotonda e non possiamo usare le mani. Gioco a _____.

b  **Amelia:** Non mi piacciono gli sport estremi. Sono troppo pericolosi! Preferisco giocare da sola. Uso una racchetta e una piccola palla gialla. Non porto una divisa. Gioco a _____.

c  **Luisa:** Porto una divisa e gioco in una squadra. Usiamo una palla e l'arbitro deve essere molto intelligente. Devo essere molto veloce. Il gioco è come la pallacanestro, ma non è la pallacanestro. Sono attaccante. Gioco a _____.

4 Complete the preposition + definite article equations with the correct articulated prepositions. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| a a + il = | f a + gli = |
| b di + la = | g di + l' = |
| c a + lo = | h da + i = |
| d da + il = | i di + lo = |
| e da + le = | j a + l' = |

5 How would you say these expressions in Italian? Say them aloud and include the appropriate hand gestures.

- a Perfect!
- b I couldn't care less!
- c He's a bit crazy.
- d How boring!

Riassunto

Now you can:

use the verbs sapere, conoscere, dare and preferire

	sapere	to know (a fact)
singular	(io) so	I know (a fact)
	(tu) sai	you know (a fact)
	(lui/lei) sa	he/she/it knows (a fact)
plural	(noi) sappiamo	we know (a fact)
	(voi) sapete	you know (a fact)
	(loro) sanno	they know (a fact)

	dare	to give
singular	(io) do	I give
	(tu) dai	you give
	(lui/lei) dà	he/she/it gives
plural	(noi) diamo	we give
	(voi) date	you give
	(loro) danno	they give

	conoscere	to know (someone or something)
singular	(io) conosco	I know (someone or something)
	(tu) conosci	you know (someone or something)
	(lui/lei) conosce	he/she/it knows (someone or something)
plural	(noi) conosciamo	we know (someone or something)
	(voi) conoscete	you know (someone or something)
	(loro) conoscono	they know (someone or something)

	preferire	to prefer
singular	(io) preferisco	I prefer
	(tu) preferisci	you prefer
	(lui/lei) preferisce	he/she/it prefers
plural	(noi) preferiamo	we prefer
	(voi) preferite	you prefer
	(loro) preferiscono	they prefer

compare different things, qualities and actions using the comparative form

Il motocross è **più veloce del** canottaggio.

Motocross is faster than canoeing.

Il canottaggio è **più avventuroso che** pericoloso.

Canoeing is more adventurous than dangerous.

Penso che studiare è **più interessante che** guardare la TV.

I think that studying is more interesting than watching TV.

use articulated prepositions

Preposition	Definite article						
	il	la	l'	lo	i	le	gli
a (at/to)	a + il = al	a + la = alla	a + l' = all'	a + lo = allo	a + i = ai	a + le = alle	a + gli = agli
da (from/by)	da + il = dal	da + la = dalla	da + l' = dall'	da + lo = dallo	da + i = dai	da + le = dalle	da + gli = dagli
di (of)	di + il = del	di + la = della	di + l' = dell'	di + lo = dello	di + i = dei	di + le = delle	di + gli = degli

identify and discuss extreme sports

l'alpinismo mountain climbing
l'arrampicata rock climbing
il bungee jumping bungee jumping
il kayak kayaking
il mountain biking mountain biking

il paracadutismo parachuting
il parapendio paragliding
il surf surfing
il windsurf windsurfing

In giro per Venezia

You will learn how to:

- buy a Venetian water-bus ticket
- identify some significant aspects, events and people associated with **Venezia**
- understand, ask for and give directions
- identify key places on a map
- use the singular familiar (**tu**), singular formal (**Lei**) and plural (**voi**) of **l'imperativo negativo**
- order and buy some food
- express likes and dislikes for food.



La gita comincia



10

The Australian students and Nina have just arrived in **Venezia** for a visit to the 'City of Canals'. They are meeting up with Akrim, Stephen's host-brother, at a **vaporetto** (water-bus) landing to make their way to their accommodation.

1 Ragazzi, io vado a domandare come si arriva alla pensione. Ci incontriamo fra dieci minuti nella sala d'arrivo.

Va bene. Mando un SMS a Akrim e dico che siamo alla stazione.

2 Quindi, la pensione è in Calle del Vin... Secondo questa cartina non è molto lontano da Piazza San Marco.

3 Per cortesia, come si arriva a Calle del Vin? È molto lontano?

Non è molto lontano, ma è meglio prendere il vaporetto. L'imbarco è di fronte all'ingresso della stazione. Prenda il vaporetto numero due e scenda alla fermata San Zaccaria. La biglietteria per il vaporetto è all'ingresso della stazione.

4 Cinque biglietti di corsa semplice per San Zaccaria, per favore.

Certo, signorina. Il vaporetto parte fra quindici minuti.

5 Ecco! Allora... vediamo un po'. Ah sì, Calle del Vin è di là. Avanti ragazzi!

Dobbiamo trovare Akrim... è già qui. Ecco un SMS: dice che è vicino allo sbarco.

6 Stephen, penso che Akrim è là... È lui accanto a quella bancarella?

Sì, è lui che saluta con le mani in aria.

Ciao ragazzi! Finalmente siete arrivati. Benvenuti a Venezia!

Later that day, Nathan and Jessica are out exploring **Venezia** and have become a little lost. They ask a couple of locals for directions.

Scusate ragazze, come arriviamo a Piazza San Marco?

Allora, continuate sempre dritto, poi girate a sinistra e poi subito a destra, e di nuovo a sinistra e poi seguite il canale fino a...

7

Ma no... scherza. Continuate sempre dritto e in fondo girate a sinistra. Questa è la Calle dei Forni. Seguite la calle fino in fondo e arrivate a Piazza San Marco.

Mille grazie!

8

ABC Glossario

nomi

la bancarella

the market stall

la biglietteria

the ticket office

i biglietti di corsa semplice

the standard one-way tickets

la calle

the calle (narrow Venetian street)

il canale

the canal

la cartina

the map

l'imbarco

the boarding (point)

l'ingresso

the entrance

la pensione

the guest house

la sala d'arrivo

the arrivals hall/room

lo sbarco

the landing

la signorina

miss, Miss (title)

la stazione

the station

il vaporetto

the water-bus

avverbi

a destra

to the right

a sinistra

to the left

di nuovo

again

già

already

meglio

better

verbi

continuate you (plural) continue (from **continuare**—to continue)

domandare to ask

Biglietti

Biglietto di corsa semplice	€6,50
Biglietto dodici ore	€16,00
Biglietto ventiquattro ore	€18,00
Biglietto trentasei ore	€26,00
Biglietto due giorni	€28,00
Biglietto tre giorni	€33,00
Biglietto tre giorni giovani	€18,00
Biglietto sette giorni	€50,00



Cosa pensi ?

Look at **il vaporetto** ticket prices. How do they compare with prices for the main form of public transport where you live? Do you think there is a reason why **vaporetto** ticket prices might be so expensive? Do you think the same prices would apply to other forms of public transport in Italy? You might like to use the Internet to find out more about public transport prices in your area, and to convert the prices from Australian dollars into euro.

girare	you (plural) turn (from girare —to turn)
parte	he/she/it leaves (from partire —to leave)
penso	I think (from pensare —to think)
saluta	he/she/it says hello (from salutare —to say hello)
scenda	he/she/it gets off (imperative form) (from scendere —to get off/to disembark)
scherza	he/she/it is joking (from scherzare —to joke)
seguite	you (plural) follow (from seguire —to follow)
trovare	to find

preposizioni

accanto (a)	beside, near
di fronte (a)	opposite, facing
fra	in (when referring to time) or between (when referring to location)
in fondo	at/to the end

altre espressioni e parole

avanti!	come on!
come si arriva...?	how do you get to ...?
è di là	is over there
finalmente!	finally!
fino	until
le mani in aria	hands in the air
mille grazie!	thank you very much!
per cortesia	excuse me (literally: 'with courtesy')
sempre dritto	straight ahead

Attività 5.1

Look at the cartoon story on pages 74–5 again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- When the group arrives at the station in **Venezia**, Nina tells the students to meet her in the arrivals hall. **V F**
- La pensione** is located in **Piazza San Marco**. **V F**
- The group will catch a water-bus to get to their accommodation. **V F**
- The woman at the information office tells Nina to catch **vaporetto** number one. **V F**
- Akrim is waiting for the group near the water-bus landing. **V F**





Introducing Venezia

Look at a map of Italy (page x). Can you find Venice? **Venezia**, or Venice as we call it in English, is a unique place. It is built on over 118 small islands, is linked by more than 400 bridges and is surrounded by a lagoon.

In ancient Roman times, **Venezia** was used by the citizens of nearby Roman mainland colonies for fishing and hunting. A few centuries on, around the fourth century CE, these people stabilised the marshy lagoon and islands, and learnt to navigate the channels and control the rivers, making **Venezia** a place where people could actually live.

Venezia started to grow and prosper and by the eighth century CE, it was an independent city state and a flourishing trade centre.

In the ninth century CE, the body of St Mark the Evangelist was supposedly abducted by Venetians from its burial place in Alexandria, Egypt and taken to **Venezia**. This event initiated the building of the foundations of **la Basilica di San Marco** (St Mark's Basilica) and **il Palazzo Ducale** (the Doge's Palace)—both have become major tourist attractions for visitors to **Venezia**. Around this time, the symbol of St Mark, the winged lion, became associated with **Venezia**. It still remains on the city's flag and as a feature of buildings around the city.

Venezia kept growing as a major trading power. The city excelled in ship building and in the thirteenth century expanded its control of major trading and shipping routes. In 1260 Venetian trader and explorer Marco Polo left his home city with his father and uncle on what was to become a historic expedition to Asia.

In the fifteenth century, **Venezia's** wealth and power were such that the other European powers were angered and felt threatened by the city's dominance. This resulted in a period of war and the start of **Venezia's** decline.

At the end of the eighteenth century, Napoleon invaded **Venezia**, the city was declared bankrupt and the last **Doge** (head of state) was deposed.

In more recent times, **Venezia** has become an essential stop for tourism in Europe and is visited by more than 20 million tourists a year. However, post-war industrial growth has resulted in environmental troubles for **la laguna** (the lagoon)—pollution and tidal problems have the authorities looking for solutions and initiatives to protect the city.

Venezia is slowly sinking and is twenty-three centimetres lower in the water than it was one hundred years ago. Occurrences of **acqua alta** (high waters) have increased dramatically and now happen about 130 days a year. Experts say that within the next century, the city will sink completely unless a solution can be found.



il leone di San Marco



il Palazzo Ducale



Dove vanno i turisti se Venezia non c'è più?

Attività 5.2



Find out more about **Venezia** and the important parts of the city's history by researching the following topics:

- **Venezia's** geography
- **Venezia's** early inhabitants
- **la Basilica di San Marco**
- **il Palazzo Ducale** and **Venezia's Dogi**
- Marco Polo.

Work in groups of five with each member choosing one topic to research and report back to the group.



La Basilica di San Marco con l'acqua alta

Cosa pensi ?

- 1 What do you think about **Venezia's** environmental problems? In what ways could tourism be impacting on the city's environmental issues (like pollution and **acqua alta**)?
- 2 What do you think could be done to resolve **Venezia's** current flooding problems and keep it from sinking? What role does science play in the situation?



Investigazione Linguistica

Asking for directions

You may recall that **dove** means 'where'. When used with a form of **essere** it can mean 'where is ...?'.

Esempi **Dov'è la pensione?** Where is the guest house?

Dove sono gli studenti? Where are the students?

Dove can also be used with other verbs.

Esempi **Dove vai?** (from **andare**) Where are you going?

Dove prendiamo il vaporetto? (from **prendere**)
Where do we catch the water-bus?

A simple response in Italian to the question '**Dov'è** + name of a place?' is to give the street or square it is located in.

Esempio **Dov'è la pensione Verdi?** Where is the Verdi guest house?

È in Via Verdi. It's in Via Verdi.

Posti in città

Places around town

Look at the places shown on the map. These are places you may need to look for when travelling around Italy's cities.



1 l'albergo/l'hotel



2 la pizzeria



3 la stazione



4 la fermata



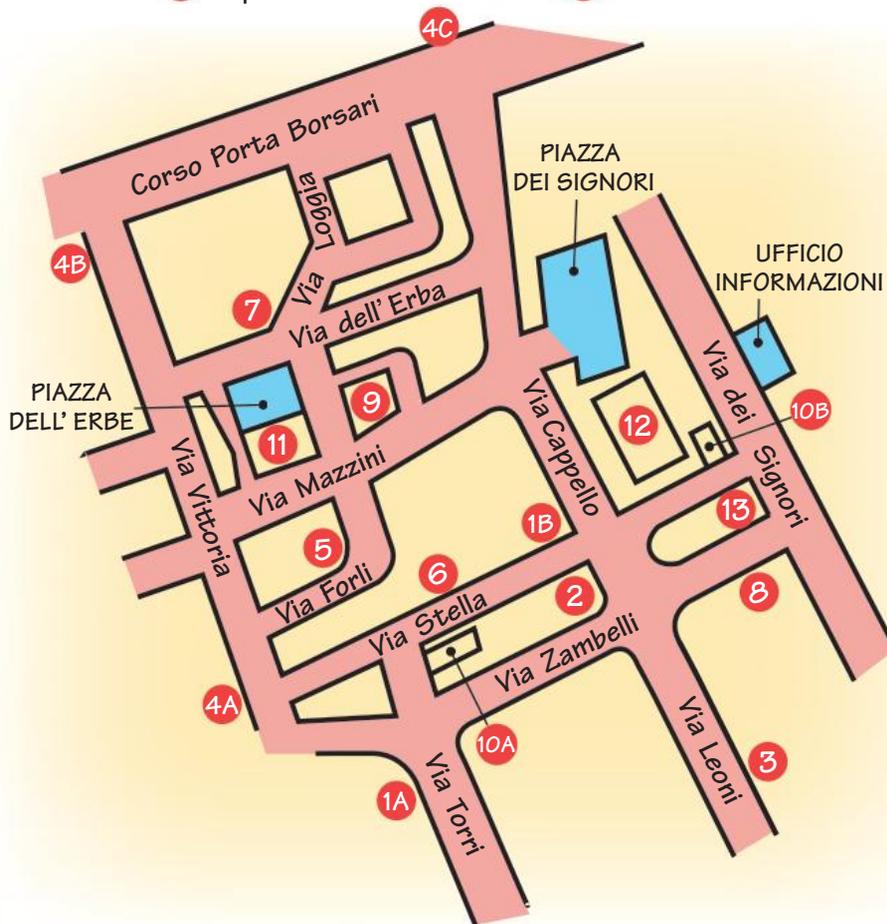
13 l'ufficio postale



12 l'ospedale



11 il museo



5 la farmacia



6 la pasticceria



7 la gelateria



10 il bancomat



9 il supermercato



8 la chiesa



Tocca a te!

Imagine that you are in the Italian town as shown in the map on page 79. Work with a partner and take turns to ask for and give directions in Italian for the below pictured places around town. Use the map as a guide and follow the **esempio**.

Esempio



A: Dov'è la chiesa?
B: È in Via Zambelli.



Investigazione Linguistica



Understanding and giving directions

Here are some basic phrases to use when giving directions in Italian.



Cartelli a Venezia

- continua/vai dritto** continue/go straight
- gira a destra** turn right
- gira a sinistra** turn left

sulla destra on the right

Esempio Prendi la prima strada sulla destra.
Take the first road on the right.

sulla sinistra on the left

Esempio Prendi la seconda strada sulla sinistra.
Take the second road on the left.

attraversa la strada cross the road

Remember that when giving directions, an instruction or an order in Italian, you change the verb to **l'imperativo** (the imperative form).



Examine the table below to see how the verbs **girare**, **prendere** and **seguire** are conjugated in the **tu**, **Lei** and **voi** forms of **l'imperativo**. You should be familiar with the **tu** and **voi** forms from your learning in Chapter 1.

	girare (to turn)	prendere (to take, to catch)	seguire (to follow)
Imperative instruction for tu (familiar person)	gira a destra	prendi la prima strada sulla destra	segui la strada
Imperative instruction for Lei (formal/polite)	giri a destra	prenda la prima strada sulla destra	segua la strada
Imperative instruction for voi (group of people)	girate a destra	prendete la prima strada sulla destra	seguite la strada

Here are some other useful phrases for saying where something is located.

- α cento metri** within one hundred metres
- α pochi passi (da)** α short distance (from)
(literally: 'α few steps from')
- al semaforo** at the traffic lights
- all'incrocio** at the intersection
- all'angolo** on the corner

Attività 5.3

Translate these Italian directions into English, in your exercise book. Beside your translations, write the letter **F** if the direction is for a friend (familiar), the letter **P** to indicate the formal (polite) form, or the letter **G** (group) if the instruction is for more than one person.

Esempio **Gira a sinistra.** \longrightarrow Turn left. (**F**)

- 1 Continui in Via Monteleone, poi giri a destra in Via Mantovani.
- 2 Segua la strada fino in fondo.
- 3 Prendi la seconda strada sulla sinistra.
- 4 Il bancomat è qui vicino; continuate sempre dritto su questa strada.
- 5 L'albergo è in Via Rudolfo. Andate sempre dritto in Via de' Medici e poi girate a sinistra in Via Rudolfo.

Handy hint

When Nathan and Jessica got lost in the cartoon story earlier in the chapter, they were given directions in the **voi** form of the imperative because the instruction was being given to two people—Nathan and Jessica.

Continue sempre dritto e in fondo **girate** a sinistra. Questa è la Calle dei Forni. **Seguite** la calle fino in fondo e **arrivate** a Piazza San Marco.



Handy hint

Remember, you use the familiar form when you are talking to a friend, someone your own age or a family member. With anyone else, use the formal or polite form.

Tocca a te!

Work with a partner and take turns to ask where a place is and give simple directions in Italian. Use the pictures to identify the place and the arrows to specify directions.

Esempio



A: Scusa, dov'è la chiesa?
B: Vai dritto e poi gira a destra.

1



4



2



5



3



6



Investigazione Culturale

Getting around Venezia

The best way to get around **Venezia** is by **vaporetto** and on foot. **Vaporetto** services run along the two main canals, including the Grand Canal and around the outskirts of the city.

The canals in **Venezia** are used for delivering everything. Barges and smaller boats penetrate the side canals, off-loading food, stores and equipment. The canals are also used for emergency services. There are police speedboats and barges, white ambulance boats, and fire boats, which put out about 300 fires a year.



Un vaporetto sul Canal Grande



Just like in most old Italian towns, signs naming streets or **piazze** in **Venezia** are found on the sides of buildings rather than on poles on the side of the street.

Venezia's watery location has also influenced the unique terms for its streets. Here are some of the more common terms you may see around **Venezia**.

la calle	the Venetian equivalent of the Italian via (street)
il canale	the canal
il ponte	the bridge
il rio	the (narrow) canal
la riva	the quay

Venice only has one piazza, **Piazza San Marco** (St Mark's Square). The other squares in the city are referred to as **campo**, as in **Campo Santa Margherita**. **Piazza San Marco** has long been **Venezia's** ceremonial gathering place and is a popular area for tourists to stroll, window shop, listen to the orchestras, have a drink and fight off the thousands of pigeons that inhabit the square during the day!



Piazza San Marco



Attività 5.4



Listen to the audio. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- | | | | |
|------------|---|----------|----------|
| 1 a | Someone is asking for directions to the church. | V | F |
| b | The church is in Via Garibaldi. | V | F |
| c | The school is opposite the church. | V | F |
| 2 a | The group is instructed to catch water-bus number five. | V | F |
| b | The stop to get off at is near the station. | V | F |
| c | A ticket for three days costs €33,00. | V | F |
| 3 a | The guest house is one hundred metres away. | V | F |
| b | The guest house is on the left of the piazza . | V | F |
| c | The guest house is very small. | V | F |

Attività 5.5

The directions to the pizza restaurant have been broken up and are not in order. Re-order the words to make a sensible set of directions. The English translation below will help you. Write your answer in your exercise book.

The pizza restaurant is close by. Continue to the end of this street and turn left and then immediately right into Via Delfini. The pizza restaurant is on the right after the pharmacy.

continui

dopo la farmacia

e giri a sinistra

e poi

in fondo a

in Via Delfini

la pizzeria è

questa via

la pizzeria è

subito a destra

sulla destra

vicino

Cosa pensi ?

Are the directions in **Attività 5.5** in the familiar (**tu**) or formal (**Lei**) form of the imperative? How can you tell? Why do you think that is?

Tocca a te!

Practise saying that these places are near, opposite, or a short distance away from another place.

Esempio pharmacy/a short distance from/supermarket
La farmacia è a pochi passi dal supermercato.

- 1 automatic teller machine/opposite/hotel
- 2 ice-cream shop/near/pizza restaurant
- 3 post office/near/intersection
- 4 church/a short distance from/school
- 5 pastry shop/opposite/pharmacy
- 6 station/a short distance from/bus stop
- 7 hospital/near/pharmacy
- 8 museum/opposite/supermarket

Handy hint

Notice in the **Tocca a te!** **esempio** how **da** from **a pochi passi da** joins with the definite article of the noun that follows (**il supermercato**) to become **dal**. You may remember from your learning in Chapter 4 that this construction is called an 'articulated preposition'.



L'imperativo negativo

You know that **l'imperativo** is used in Italian when giving an order, command or instruction. How would you tell/instruct someone *not* to do something? The same principles apply but you would use the grammar form known as **l'imperativo negativo** (the negative imperative).

Look at these **esempi**:

Prendi la seconda strada. (imperative)

Non prendere la seconda strada. (negative imperative)

Prenda la seconda strada. (imperative)

Non prenda la seconda strada. (negative imperative)

Prendete la seconda strada. (imperative)

Non prendete la seconda strada. (negative imperative)

To form the negative imperative, use **non** + the infinitive form of the verb for the one person **tu** (familiar) form, and simply add **non** before the conjugated verb for the one person **Lei** (formal/polite) and **voi** (plural) forms.

	Imperativo	Imperativo negativo
Instruction for tu (familiar person)	Vai al cinema.	Non andare al cinema.
	Prendi il treno.	Non prendere il treno.
	Segui la strada.	Non seguire la strada.
Instruction for Lei (formal/polite)	Vada al cinema.	Non vada al cinema.
	Prenda il treno.	Non prenda il treno.
	Segua la strada.	Non segua la strada.
Instruction for voi (group of people)	Andate al cinema.	Non andate al cinema.
	Prendete il treno.	Non prendete il treno.
	Seguite la strada.	Non seguite la strada.



Cosa pensi ?

What do you think this sign is instructing people not to do in a church?

Attività 5.6

Change these instructions into **l'imperativo negativo**. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio Gira a destra. —————> **Non girare a destra.**

- 1 Giri a sinistra in Via Mantovani.
- 2 Prendete Via Napoleone.
- 3 Scendi alla fermata vicino all'ufficio postale.
- 4 Seguite la strada in fondo.
- 5 Continui dritto su questa strada.



Cosa pensi ?

Are there any streets or places in your local area that are named after significant people or events?

Piazze and street names

If you are lucky enough to travel to Italy, you will notice that many of the streets and **piazze** are named after famous Italians, important dates in Italian history, or have some religious significance (e.g. named after a saint or religious event). Among the most common are:

- **Via Giuseppe Mazzini** (a famous Italian patriot and politician who contributed to the formation of the modern Italian state)
- **Via XX settembre** (20 September is the date when Rome became part of Italy in 1870, after the country's unification)
- **Via XXIV maggio** (24 May is the date when Italy entered the First World War)
- **Via XXV aprile** (25 April is the date of Italy's liberation at the end of the Second World War)
- **Via San Paolo** (derives from St Paul, one of the apostles in the Christian faith).



Attività 5.7



In groups, use library and Internet resources to find out more about the people, dates and historical events that have Italian streets and **piazze** named in their honour. You might want to consider who the person was, when the event occurred, and why the person or event became significant to the Italian people. Present your findings to the class. Here is a list of some examples to get you started.

- **Corso Vittorio Emanuele**
- **Via Giuseppe Garibaldi**
- **Piazza dell'Unità**
- **Piazza Indipendenza**
- **Piazza della Vittoria**
- **Via Cavour**

Ho una fame da lupo!

Akrim, Stephen and Melanie have been out and about visiting the sights of **Venezia**. They decide to stop for **uno spuntino** (a snack) at a **pizzeria**.



1



2

D'accordo, va bene.



3

Ecco! Una pizza alla salsiccia... una con i funghi... una con le patate... e un'aranciata. Sono €31,00. Buon appetito!



4

Gnam, gnam... molto buona!



5

5

Talking about food



Here are some expressions to help you talk about food.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Buon appetito! | Enjoy your meal! (literally: 'good appetite') |
| Da leccarsi i baffi! | It's finger-licking good! (literally: 'It's moustache-licking good.') |
| Fa schifo! | It's disgusting! |
| Gnam, gnam! | Yum, yum! |
| Ho una fame da lupo! | I'm starving!/I'm hungry like a wolf! |
| Mi fa venire l'acquolina in bocca. | (It) makes my mouth water. |
| Mi mangerei un cavallo! | I could eat a horse. |



Attività 5.8

Can you match the Italian toppings on the menu from the cartoon story on page 87 to the English toppings below? Write your answers in your exercise book. Remember to look for cognates.

- olives vegetables mushrooms ham and artichokes
 sausage potatoes ricotta and rocket (leaf vegetable)

Attività 5.9



Listen to the audio of five people ordering pizza. In your exercise book, make a note in English of the quantity and type of pizza each person chooses, and drinks also ordered and the total cost.

Esempio one pizza with mushrooms and sausage, €8,00



Listen to the five dialogues from **Attività 5.9** again and, in your exercise book, note how people order food and give the price in Italian. Then, with a partner, imagine you are at the **pizzeria** from the cartoon story on page 87. What would you order? Use your notes to practise ordering food and giving the price in Italian. If you know other ways of requesting food and responding, try to use them in your conversation.

Ripasso

1 Nina has become lost while in **Venezia** and stops a man in the street to ask for directions. Complete the missing parts of dialogue, as indicated by the text in brackets, in your exercise book. Once you have done that practise reading the completed dialogue aloud with a partner.

Nina: Scusi, dov'è la stazione?

Signore: (It is not very far. Take the second street.)

Nina: Sulla sinistra o sulla destra?

Signore: (The second street on the right. It's **Calle Nova del Tabacchi**.)

Nina: La stazione è in Calle Nova del Tabacchi?

Signore: (No, the station is in **Piazzale Roma**. Continue along **Calle Nova del Tabacchi** until the end. Turn to the right and you're in **Piazzale Roma**.)

Nina: Grazie.

Signore: Prego.

2 Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

A	Mi scusi, Scusi,	dov'è la gelateria Bianchi? la gelateria Bianchi è lontana? come si arriva in Via Biancaneve?
---	---------------------	---

B	Continui sempre dritto in Via Verdi.	La gelateria è in fondo. La gelateria è molto vicino all'angolo di Via Verdi e Via Biancaneve. Via Biancaneve è la seconda via.
---	--------------------------------------	---

A	Sulla	destra? sinistra?
---	-------	----------------------

B	Sì,	sulla destra.
	No,	sulla sinistra.

A	Grazie!
---	---------

B	Prego.
---	--------

3 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a I want a pizza with sausage.
- b Catch the water-bus at the stop near **Piazza San Marco**. (group instruction)
- c Don't get off at the stop opposite the bridge! (one person, familiar instruction)
- d The coffee is disgusting!
- e Don't turn left, turn right! (one person, formal instruction)
- f Where is the automatic teller machine?
- g The hotel is a short distance from the pizza restaurant.
- h Continue straight and turn right at the end of the street. (one person, formal instruction)

Riassunto

Now you can:

identify key places on a map

l'albergo/l'hotel	the hotel
il bancomat	the automatic teller machine (ATM)
la chiesa	the church
la farmacia	the pharmacy
la fermata	the (bus) stop
la gelateria	the ice-cream shop
il museo	the museum
l'ospedale	the hospital
la pasticceria	the cake shop
la pizzeria	the pizza restaurant
la stazione	the station
il supermercato	the supermarket
l'ufficio postale	the post office

order and buy some food

Voglio una pizza con funghi.	I want a pizza with mushrooms.
Ecco! Sono €7,00.	Here it is! That's €7,00.
Pizza toppings:	
i funghi	the mushrooms
le olive	the olives
le patate	the potatoes
il prosciutto e i carciofi	the ham and the artichokes
la ricotta e la rucola	the ricotta and the rocket (leaf vegetable)
la salsiccia	the sausage
le verdure	the vegetables

understand, ask for and give directions

Dov'è la pensione?	Where is the guest house?
È in Via Verdi.	It's in Via Verdi.
continua/vai dritto	continue/go straight
gira a destra	turn right
gira a sinistra	turn left
sulla destra	on the right
sulla sinistra	on the left
attraversa la strada	cross the road
a cento metri	within one hundred metres
a pochi passi (da)	a short distance (from) (literally: 'a few steps from')
al semaforo	at the traffic lights
all'incrocio	at the intersection
all'angolo	on the corner

use the singular familiar (tu), singular formal (Lei) and plural (voi) of l'imperativo negativo

	Imperativo	Imperativo negativo
Instruction for tu (familiar person)	Vai al cinema.	Non andare al cinema.
	Prendi il treno.	Non prendere il treno.
	Segui la strada.	Non seguire la strada.
Instruction for Lei (formal/polite)	Vada al cinema.	Non vada al cinema.
	Prenda il treno.	Non prenda il treno.
	Segua la strada.	Non segua la strada.
Instruction for voi (group of people)	Andate al cinema.	Non andate al cinema.
	Prendete il treno.	Non prendete il treno.
	Seguite la strada.	Non seguite la strada.

Made in Italy: i prodotti italiani

You will learn how to:

- describe things and people using the superlative
- say 'some/any' using the partitive **di**
- use Italian words and phrases to shop for presents
- recognise Italian shops and products
- use numbers greater than 100
- avoid repetitions by using direct object pronouns.





Il migliore del mondo



While in **Venezia**, the Australian sports stars have been invited to take part in a 'face-off' sports competition organised by **Atletitalia** and broadcaster **ItalRadio 5**. Nathan has reached the final of the one-on-one basketball competition. Nina, Akrim and the other students are watching and cheering from the sidelines.

Secondo me, il brasiliano è più bravo. È più alto.

Che cosa dici! Nathan è bravissimo. Lui è più svelto e agile.

Sì, ma il brasiliano è meno stanco.



Bravissimo! Forza Nathan!

Che folla, ascoltatori! Siamo qui a Venezia per l'ultima partita di basket della competizione face-off... la più interessante, la più emozionante e la più seguita del giorno!

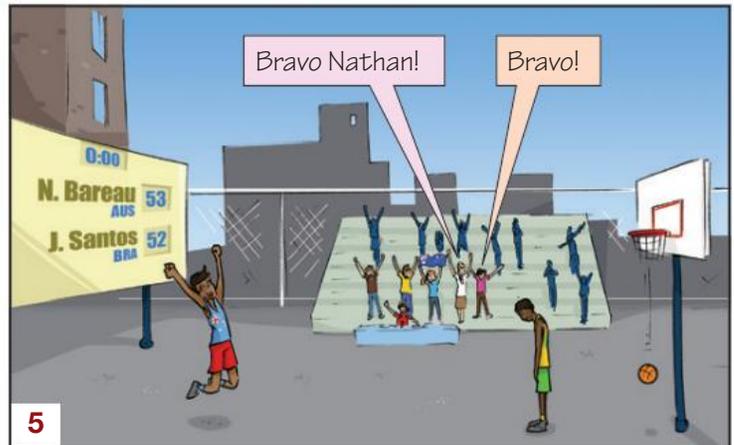
Nathan gioca benissimo. Ma anche José Santos è molto bravo.



Che partita... 52 a 50. Mancano pochi minuti alla fine. Nathan deve giocare meglio se vuole vincere.



Fra i più bravi giocatori del mondo abbiamo qui il giovane australiano Nathan Bateau e José Santos dal Brasile. Chi è il migliore? Fra pochi secondi è tutto finito! Nathan fa l'ultimo tiro a canestro... e segna! L'australiano vince la partita per 53 a 52! Che gioco emozionante!



Bravo Nathan!

Bravo!

nomi

gli ascoltatori	the listeners
il Brasile	Brazil
il brasiliano	the Brazilian
la fine	the end
il mondo	the world
i secondi	the seconds (time)

aggettivi

agile	agile
buono/a	good
emozionante	exciting
finito/a	finished
giovane	young
migliore	the best
seguito/a	popular, followed
svelto/a	quick, fast
ultimo/a	last, latest

avverbi

benissimo/a/i/e	very well
bravissimo/a/i/e	very good

verbi

segna	he/she/it scores (from segnare —to score)
vince	he/she/it wins (from vincere —to win)
vincere	to win

altre espressioni e parole

bravo!	well done!
che cosa dici!	what do you mean! (literally: 'what are you saying?')
che folla!	what a crowd!
mancano pochi minuti	there's few minutes left
tiro a canestro	shot at the basket

Attività 6.1

Look at the cartoon story on page 92 again. Answer these questions, in English, in your exercise book.

- 1 When (date) and where are the face-off sports events being held?
- 2 What do Nina and Melanie disagree about?
- 3 What is Akrim's opinion of the match-up between Nathan and his opponent?
- 4 What information does the radio DJ give about the game?
- 5 Who wins the one-on-one basketball game?



Investigazione Linguistica

Better or best? Comparative and relative superlative

The comparative, you may recall from your learning in Chapter 4, is used to say that something is better/not as good, nicer/not as nice etc. than something else. In other words, it is used to compare things (nouns), qualities (adjectives) and actions (verbs).

Esempi

Alessandro è più vecchio di Akrim.

Alessandro is older than Akrim.

Nathan è più svelto di José. Nathan is quicker than José.

The comparative is formed using **più** (more) or **meno** (less) and an adjective. The preposition **di** is used to translate 'than'.

To say that something is 'the most', 'the least', 'the best', 'the tallest' and so on, the relative superlative is used. Look at the following examples:

la casa più piccola	the smallest house
il gelato meno cremoso	the least creamy ice-cream
il ragazzo più alto	the tallest boy
le gondole meno veloci	the least fast (slowest) gondolas

The definite article is used with the relevant noun plus **più** or **meno** and the adjective. Remember, the adjective will need to change its ending to agree with the noun it is describing.



Handy hint

Automobile brands are feminine in Italian (e.g. **la Fiat, la Ferrari, l'Alfa Romeo**). This is because the word for car is feminine: **l'automobile/ la macchina**.

La Fiat 500 è l'auto più bella dell'anno

Observe the following sentences:

Comparative	Relative superlative
Venezia è più grande di Capri. Venice is bigger than Capri.	Verona è la città più grande del Veneto. Verona is the largest city in Veneto.
I vaporetti sono più veloci delle gondole. Water-buses are faster than gondolas.	Questo è il vaporetto meno veloce di Venezia. This is the least fast/slowest water-bus in Venice.

The preposition **di** (+ the definite article in some cases) has been used in both the comparative and the relative superlative phrases. In the comparative, **di** is used in both examples to translate 'than'. In the relative superlative, **di** is used to translate 'in'.

Some adjectives have regular as well as irregular comparative and relative superlative forms. The examples that follow show the most common of these.

Adjective	Comparative	Relative superlative	Example
buono/a	più buono/a (better) migliore (better)	il/la più buono/a (the best) il/la migliore (the best)	La migliore pizza di tutta l'Italia. (The best pizza in all of Italy.)
cattivo/a	più cattivo/a (worse) peggiore (worse)	il/la più cattivo/a (the worst) il/la peggiore (the worst)	Il peggiore ristorante della città. (The worst restaurant in the city.)

Attività 6.2

Give your opinion (using **Secondo me...**) about the things listed below by using the relative superlative. Don't forget to change the ending of the adjective if the noun is feminine and/or plural! Write your answers in your exercise book. Follow the example provided.

Esempio la musica classica o la musica rock (bello)
Secondo me, la musica classica è la più bella.
I think classical music is the nicer (of the two).

- il gelato al cioccolato o al limone (buono)
- il calcio o il football australiano (interessante)
- la Ferrari o la Holden (veloce)
- la matematica o le scienze (facile)
- la pizza o la bistecca (delizioso)
- i cani o i gatti (intelligente)

Handy hint

If it is obvious what is being spoken about, the noun can be omitted in relative superlative phrasing. For example:

Mi piace questa maglietta.

I like this T-shirt.

Sì, è la più bella.

Yes, it's the prettiest.

Prendo questo DVD.

I'll get this DVD.

Ma è il più caro!

But it's the most expensive!

Cosa pensi ?

What do you think the title of this Italian film means?





The absolute best! Absolute superlative

In the cartoon story earlier in the chapter, Jessica and Akrim used the words **bravissimo** and **benissimo** to describe Nathan's play in the basketball game. The **-issimo** ending can be added to an adjective to indicate that something is 'very + adjective'.

For example, **buonissimo** can be used instead of **molto buono** to mean 'very good', **bellissimo** instead of **molto bello** to say 'very beautiful' and **interessantissimo** can replace **molto interessante** if something is 'very interesting'.

It is important to remember that these **-issimo** forms need to agree with the noun being described.

- Esempi** una pizza **piccolissima** a very small pizza
 le macchine **velocissime** the very fast cars



Attività 6.3

Add **-issimo**, **-issima**, **-issimi**, or **-issime** to each of the adjectives listed below. You will need to decide which ending to use based on the gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) of what is being described. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio la piazza grande → **la piazza grandissima**

- 1 la sorella alta
- 2 i cantanti famosi
- 3 l'aeroplano veloce
- 4 le attrici comiche
- 5 il cane intelligente
- 6 le gonne corte

Cosa pensi?

As you learnt in Chapter 3, many musical terms come from the Italian language (e.g. **pianissimo** and **fortissimo**). What direction do you think these notations are giving to musicians reading the music?



Il Carnevale

Il Carnevale (the Carnival) is a centuries old tradition that is observed throughout most of Italy. It is a time of celebration before the Christian season of Lent (a period of forty days before Easter in which Christians are encouraged to 'give up' luxuries). Traditionally, Catholics gave up eating meat on Fridays during Lent and it is possible that this is where the word **carnevale** (from the Latin 'farewell to meat') originates. **Il Carnevale** in Italy is historically regarded as a time to celebrate and an opportunity to indulge in treats before the start of Lent.

Today **il Carnevale** is predominantly an occasion for Italian children to dress up in costumes and take part in parades and competitions. In Italian cities like **Venezia**, Viareggio, Ivrea and others, however, there are many organised events and celebrations for all age groups, including masked balls, costume parades and public events.

A Venetian tradition is to wear **le maschere** (masks) during **il Carnevale**. As part of the festivities in **Venezia** during this time of year (in the ten days before Shrove Tuesday) you will often see people dressed in Venetian costumes, wandering through the narrow **calle** of **Venezia**. The masks and costumes can be very ornate and made of luxurious materials.

Cosa pensi ?

Do you know of an event similar to **il Carnevale** that is practised in your community?



Attività 6.4



What else can you find out about **il Carnevale** in Italy? Do some research on the Internet and share your findings with the class.



Le maschere e i costumi di Carnevale

Facciamo shopping



Stephen, Nathan and Akrim are out doing some souvenir shopping in **Venezia**. They wander into a shop that sells typical Venetian products—Murano glass, **maschere di Carnevale**, lace from the island of Burano and leather goods.





ABC Glossario

nomi

gli anelli (di fidanzamento)	the (engagement) rings
i braccialetti	the bracelets
la cartapesta	the papier-mâché
la ceramica	the ceramic
la confezione regalo	the giftwrap (literally: 'the gift package')
le cornici	the frames
gli orecchini	the earrings
la pelle	the leather
le perline	the beads (jewellery)
il regalo	the gift
il vetro	the glass

pronomi

lo, la, li, le 'it' or 'them' when referring to something already mentioned

verbi

sbrigati hurry up (you) (from **sbrigarsi**—to hurry up)

spendere to spend

altre espressioni e parole

beh... well ... (expression)

è/sono in offerta it is/they are on special

qualcosa in particolare something in particular

senz'altro of course

sono appena arrivati they have just arrived

sono all'ultima moda they are the latest fashion/trend

zitto/a! be quiet!

Attività 6.5

Look at the cartoon story on pages 98–9 again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- 1 Stephen is looking for a gift for his girlfriend. **V F**
- 2 The frames come in leather, glass and ceramic. **V F**
- 3 There are **Carnevale** masks made from papier-mâché. **V F**
- 4 Akrim wants to buy an engagement ring. **V F**
- 5 Stephen buys three bracelets for €20,00. **V F**

Ha degli anelli di fidanzamento? Li possiamo vedere?



Investigazione Linguistica

Some or any: partitives

The simplest way to translate the English equivalent of 'some' or 'any' in Italian is to use the preposition **di** + the definite article of the noun that follows. You have already seen this construction when you looked at articulated prepositions. When **di** + the definite article are combined to mean 'some' or 'any', it is grammatically referred to as a 'partitive'. Look at the table below.

Preposition	Definite article						
	il	la	l'	lo	i	le	gli
di	di + il = del	di + la = della	di + l' = dell'	di + lo = dello	di + i = dei	di + le = delle	di + gli = degli

Esempi Ho **delle** collane e anche **degli** orecchini.
I have some necklaces and also some earrings.

Ci sono dei gioielli veneziani nel negozio?
Are there any Venetian jewels in the shop?

Attività 6.6

Use the preposition **di** + the appropriate definite article to express these phrases in Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio some/any mobile phones → **dei cellulari**

- 1 some/any pizza
- 2 some/any rings
- 3 some/any music
- 4 some/any cats
- 5 some/any time
- 6 some/any water
- 7 some/any churches
- 8 some/any trains

Cosa regaliamo?



What shall we give?

Not sure what to give as a gift to someone special?
Here are some suggestions.



Attività 6.7

Which of the potential gifts listed above would you buy the following people? Look at the pictures of each person to work out what they might like as a gift. Follow the **esempio** and write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio



Compro dei cioccolatini per mia nonna Matilde.

1



3



2



4



I negozi

The shops

Here is a list of some common types of shops that you may come across in a typical Italian city or town.

gli articoli sportivi	sells sporting goods
la boutique	sells fashion clothing
la cartoleria	sells paper products, stationery and sometimes gifts
la gioielleria	sells jewellery
il grande magazzino	sells a range of products (like a department store)
la libreria	sells books
il negozio di abbigliamento	sells clothing
il negozio di giocattoli	sells toys
il negozio di scarpe	sells shoes
il negozio di souvenir	sells souvenirs
la pelletteria	sells leather goods
la profumeria	sells beauty products, perfumes and associated items

Cosa pensi ?

Are the shops you may come across in Italy the same as shops you would expect to find in an Australian city or town? Discuss any similarities or differences.



la libreria



la boutique



la cartoleria

Tocca a te!

Cosa compri? Dove compri?

(What will you buy? Where will you buy?)

With a partner, take turns saying in Italian what gifts you would buy for different people, and what shops you would buy these gifts from in Italy.

Che regalo vuoi comprare e dove lo compri...

- 1 ...per tua madre o tuo padre?
- 2 ...per tua sorella o tuo fratello?
- 3 ...per la tua amica o il tuo amico?
- 4 ...per l'insegnante di matematica o l'insegnante d'italiano?

Tocca a te!

Imagine you are on holiday in Italy and you want to buy a present for the following people back home:

- 1 your Italian teacher
- 2 your best friend.

With a partner or in a group, prepare a dialogue based on shopping for one gift. Create a scenario so that everyone involved has a part to play. For example, a shop assistant and a customer, or a shop assistant, a customer and a stranger being asked for an opinion etc. You can use the shopping expressions in the cartoon story on pages 98–9 and some of your own. Write your script(s) in your exercise book and practise your dialogue then present it as a pair/group to the class.

Investigazione Culturale

Shopping hours

As a general practice, shops in Italy are open six days a week, from Monday to Saturday. Trading hours are from 9.00 a.m. to 12.30 p.m., when shops close for lunch and then re-open at 3.30 p.m. or later, until around 8.00 p.m. in summer (7.00 p.m. in winter months).

In some of the larger tourist cities in Italy, some shops remain open all day long (**orario continuato**) to take advantage of tourists and people shopping in their lunch-breaks. Some supermarkets and other specialty stores may also open for trading on Sunday.

Handy hint

Look at the list of **regali** and **negozi** on pages 101–2 to help you decide which gifts you will buy and where you will buy them.

Cosa pensi ?

Are the shopping hours in Italy the same as those where you live? If not, why do you think they are different?

GENTILE CLIENTE,

LA INFORMIAMO CHE
A PARTIRE DAL 04.05.2009
QUESTA AGENZIA OSSERVA
IL SEGUENTE ORARIO DI
APERTURA:
MATTINO 8.20 - 13.20
POMERIGGIO 14.30 - 16.00

UniCredit Banca di Roma



Il made in Italy

The phenomenon **il made in Italy** refers to the fact that certain Italian products and brands are held in such regard in other parts of the world that to have an object with a tag 'made in Italy' on it indicates that the object is of high quality, superior craftsmanship and stylish design.

Italy's fame stretches across a range of areas, including motor vehicles, fashion, jewellery and accessories, leather goods, textiles and home wares.



Un'Alfa Romeo



I prodotti di moda, scarpe e pelle

Area	Brands/products
Automobiles	Ferrari —founded in 1928 by Enzo Ferrari; the company originally focused on racing cars then expanded to producing street vehicles in 1947 Alfa Romeo —was established in Milan in 1910 and has been part of the FIAT group since 1986
Motorcycles/ scooters	Ducati —was founded in Bologna in 1926 as a small, family business producing radio components, and has grown to become an international motorcycle brand
Fashion	Versace —was originally a fashion house, but now also produces accessories, fragrances and home wares Armani —was created by Giorgio Armani who is a celebrated and influential Italian fashion designer
Jewellery	Bulgari —usually written as BVLGARI in the ancient Roman style; this company originally made its name in jewellery, but today is associated with many products, including watches and handbags
Eye glasses/ sunglasses	Luxottica —originates from north-east Italy and is one of the world's largest eyewear manufactures
Shoes/leather goods	Fendi —launched in 1925 as a maker of fur and leather products, Fendi's product range now includes fragrances, watches and eyewear
Textiles	Missoni —a family-run business that was established in 1958 and is renowned for its bright, colourful designs in knitwear and fabrics
Home wares	Alessi —dates back to the 1930s as one of the world's leading manufacturers of designer kitchen and tableware



Prodotti artigianali

Also associated with **il made in Italy** are a range of **prodotti artigianali** (handcrafted products) that are examples of traditional methods of production and are usually associated with a particular town or region of Italy. These products are often purchased by tourists as 'high quality' souvenirs. Some of these include:

Il vetro di Murano—Murano, an island of **Venezia**, has been the heart of Venetian glass making for over 800 years. Several glass factories, some dating back hundreds of years, are still in production today

La frutta al marzapane—typically Sicilian, marzipan fruit is an intricate depiction of fruit using marzipan (almond and sugar paste usually used for icing and decorating cakes)

Il limoncello—a lemon liqueur made from lemons grown in southern Italian coastal areas, such as Sorrento

Il marmo di Carrara—the famous white or blue-grey marble of Carrara has been used since ancient times

L'aceto balsamico—balsamic vinegar has been made in the area around Modena/Reggio Emilia since medieval times.



il vetro di Murano



la frutta al marzapane

Cosa pensi ?

Have you come across any of the brands or products mentioned in the **Investigazione culturale**? Are you familiar with any other Italian products or brands that support the idea of **il made in Italy**? Can you think of any Australian products or brands that may have a similar global awareness?

Attività 6.8

In groups, research at least one Italian brand or product that is famous around the world. Report your findings to the class in a presentation method approved by your teacher. In your research, you may want to consider:

- what the brand or product is
- where it is manufactured in Italy
- the origins (history) of the brand or product
- which countries (other than Italy) are the main consumers of the brand or product
- whether the brand or product is available in Australia.



Numbers greater than 100

To express numbers greater than 100 in Italian, use the information below to start you off on the counting pattern.

100	cento	500	cinquecento	1438	millequattrocentotrentotto
101	centouno	600	seicento	2000	duemila
123	centoventitré	700	settecento	2220	duemiladuecentoventi
200	duecento	800	ottocento	3000	tremila
257	duecentocinquantesette	900	novecento	10 000	diecimila
300	trecento	1000	mille	1 million	un milione
400	quattrocento	1012	milledodici	2 million	due milioni

Handy hint

When writing prices in the euro that include cents, Italians use a comma rather than a decimal point (e.g. €12,50).

Attività 6.1



Listen to the audio of four shopping conversations. For each dialogue, make a note in English of the item that is being discussed, the price and whether the customer buys it or not. Write your answers in your exercise book.



Investigazione Linguistica

Direct object pronouns

A direct object pronoun is used to replace a noun that has already been mentioned. Look at the sentences below:

Che collana bellissima! La prendo!

What a beautiful necklace! I'll take *it*!

Ecco il libro! Lo vuoi? Here's the book. Do you want *it*?

Lo and **la** in these sentences are examples of direct object pronouns. They are used to replace the noun referring to an object, item or person and take its place, generally *before* the verb.

In the first example, **la** is used to replace **collana**, which was mentioned in the first part of the example. In the second example, **lo** replaces **libro**. So **lo** and **la** (translated as 'it' in English) replace an object (noun) that has been mentioned before.



Why do you think **la** is used to translate 'it' in one example and **lo** in the other? **La collana** is a singular feminine noun so **la** is used to replace it in the sentence. **Il libro** is a singular masculine noun, therefore **lo** is used as its replacement.

Direct object pronouns can be singular or plural depending on what is being replaced. In the same manner as **la** and **lo**, the pronouns **le** and **li** can also be used to replace nouns.

Che scarpe bellissime! Le prendo!

What beautiful shoes! I'll take *them*!

Ecco i CD! Li vuoi? Here are the CDs! Do you want *them*?

Look at the examples that follow. Can you work out what word in the first part of the example is being replaced by the direct object pronoun in the second part?

Chi è quella ragazza? Non la conosco.

Who is that girl? I don't know *her*.

Viene Matteo. Lo conosci? Matteo is coming. Do you know *him*?

Marina e Sofia arrivano alle due. Le incontriamo in piazza davanti alla stazione.

Marina and Sofia are arriving at two. We'll meet *them* in the town square in front of the station.

I ragazzi sono in ritardo. Li chiamo subito.

The boys are late. I'll call *them* immediately.

Handy hint

Remember, direct object pronouns go before the verb.

Attività 6.10

Which direct object pronoun (**lo**, **la**, **li** or **le**) would you use to replace each of these nouns? The definite articles have not been included, so take note of the last letters of the nouns to help you decide which direct object pronoun to use. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio ragazze → **le**

- 1 partita
- 2 pappagallo
- 3 anelli
- 4 macchina
- 5 maschere
- 6 trombe
- 7 supermercato
- 8 festa
- 9 gruppi
- 10 musei



Attività 6.11

Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

A	Buongiorno.	Desidera?
	Buonasera.	

B	Vorrei...	una maglietta.
	Vorrei vedere...	una sciarpa.
		dei pullover.
		delle cornici.

A	Quanto vuole spendere?
----------	------------------------

B	Circa	€20,00.
		€50,00.
		€120,00.

A	Questa	maglietta	è bella.
	Le piace	sciarpa	
		questo pullover?	
		questa cornice?	

B	Sì, è molto bello.	Quanto costa?
	Sì, è molto bella.	
	Non mi piace il colore.	

A	È in offerta. Solo €105,00.	lo abbiamo in	marrone.
	Sì,	la abbiamo in	blu.

B	Costa troppo!	Non	lo	prendo.	Ha altro?
	Non costa molto.	Sì,	la	prendo.	

A	Mi dispiace. Non abbiamo altro.	Buona giornata.
	Sono €105,00.	Buonasera.

B	Arrivederci.
	Ecco. Arrivederci.

Handy hint

If B selects **Ha altro?** then A may choose to offer some other products and go back to an earlier stage in the conversation.

Ripasso

1 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.
Hint: You will need to use direct object pronouns for some of them.

- a Louis is the fastest boy in the class.
- b These bracelets are nice. Do you want them?
- c Fabio is older than Ali, but Joshua is the oldest.
- d I like this jacket. I'll take it!
- e Who is that boy? I don't know him.

2 Identify the relative superlative phrases in these sentences. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio Secondo me, gli italiani sono i piloti più bravi di Formula Uno.

- a Marco Polo è l'esploratore più famoso d'Italia.
- b Roma è la città meno moderna d'Italia.
- c L'Australia è l'isola più grande del mondo.
- d Carla è la ragazza meno giovane del gruppo.
- e Questo è il bambino più cattivo della famiglia.

3 Use the absolute superlative (**-issimo, -issima, -issimi, -issime**) to translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio The Ferrari is very fast. —————> **La Ferrari è velocissima.**

- a The film is very good.
- b Latin is very hard.
- c Swimming is very boring.
- d That girl is very creative.
- e Paula is not very tall.

4 Listen to the sentences describing **Venezia** and take note of the number above 100 mentioned in each piece of audio. Then write the number in words, in Italian, in your exercise book.



5 Listen to the department store announcements about products on special. As you listen, take notes in English in your exercise book, listing the product(s) being advertised, what information is provided about the product(s) and the price/offer. The first has been done for you as an example.



Esempio

Product	Information provided	Price/offer
'Made in Italy' T-shirts	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• many colours• store on the second floor	€40,00

Riassunto

Now you can:

describe things and people using the superlative

Relative superlative	Absolute superlative
Verona è la città più grande del Veneto. Verona is the largest city in Veneto.	Roma è una città grandissima . Rome is a very big city.
Questo è il vaporetto meno veloce di Venezia. This is the least fast/slowest water-bus in Venice.	Questo motorino è velocissimo . This scooter is very fast.

say 'some/any' using the partitive di

Preposition	Definite article						
	il	la	l'	lo	i	le	gli
di	di + il = del	di + la = della	di + l' = dell'	di + lo = dello	di + i = dei	di + le = delle	di + gli = degli

Ho **delle** collane e anche **degli** orecchini.
Ci sono **dei** gioielli veneziani nel negozio?

I have some necklaces and also some earrings.
Are there any Venetian jewels in the shop?

use Italian words and phrases to shop for presents

i biglietti per un concerto	the concert tickets
il CD di musica	the music CD
i cioccolatini	the chocolates
la collana	the necklace
i libri	the books
il lettore MP3	the MP3 player
la macchina fotografica	the photographic camera
la maschera veneziana	the Venetian mask
l'orologio	the watch, the clock
il portafoglio	the wallet
il profumo	the perfume
il vaso di vetro di Murano	the Murano glass vase
Desidera?	Can I help you?
Cerco un regalo per...	I'm looking for a present for ...

recognise Italian shops

gli articoli sportivi	sells sporting goods
la boutique	sells fashion clothing
la cartoleria	sells paper products, stationery and sometimes gifts
la gioielleria	sells jewellery
il grande magazzino	sells a range of products (like a department store)
la libreria	sells books
il negozio di abbigliamento	sells clothing
il negozio di giocattoli	sells toys
il negozio di scarpe	sells shoes
il negozio di souvenir	sells souvenirs
la pelletteria	sells leather goods
la profumeria	sells beauty products, perfumes and associated items

avoid repetitions by using direct object pronouns

Chi è quella ragazza? Non **la** conosco.
Viene Matteo. **Lo** conosci?
Marina e Sofia arrivano alle due. **Le** incontriamo in piazza davanti alla stazione.
I ragazzi sono in ritardo. **Li** chiamo subito.

Who is that girl? I don't know *her*.
Matteo is coming. Do you know *him*?
Marina and Sofia are arriving at two. We'll meet *them* in the town square in front of the station.
The boys are late. I'll call *them* immediately.

Il mare e la montagna: la geografia d'Italia

You will learn how to:

- talk about past events and experiences using the past tense (**il passato prossimo**)
- use **essere** with certain verbs to form **il passato prossimo**
- recognise Italian geographical features
- use adverbs to express how and how often you do activities
- understand what dialects are and why they exist in Italy.



Il tempo vola!



19 Jessica and Stephen are at Alessandro's place looking at photos on the computer that they have taken of their time in Italy thus far. Alessandro is also keen to see their photos and hear about their memorable experiences.

Jessica, ti ricordi il primo giorno che siamo arrivati in Italia?

Sì, e un paio di giorni dopo siamo usciti con Alessandro. Ti ricordi Alessandro?

Sì, mi ricordo. Come vola il tempo!

1

Pensiamo un po'... dove siamo andati? A Roma, a Venezia, e tu sei andata in Liguria, vero?

Sì, ho fatto un bel giro di Genova. Sono andata anche in montagna con la famiglia che mi ospita. Vanno spesso a sciare d'inverno.

2

Beata te! Sei riuscita a sciare?

Macché! Sono caduta per terra costantemente! Sono tornata a casa con il sedere dolorante!!

3

Poverina! Non ti preoccupare Jessica. Tutte le piste sono difficili all'inizio. Quanto tempo siete rimasti in montagna? Dove siete andati?

Siamo stati tre giorni sul Monte Bianco, sul confine francese.

Ah sì, in Valle d'Aosta. È la più alta montagna in Italia.

4

Jessica, secondo te, qual è stata l'esperienza più bella del viaggio?

Mmm... forse quando sono entrata nella Basilica di San Pietro a Roma. È stupenda! Che peccato che non abbiamo visto il Papa.

5

E per te, Stephen?

Per me, la cosa più bella è stata quando sono andato al liceo scientifico con Nathan e Caterina. Guarda questa foto di noi davanti al liceo. Caterina è stata molto carina...

6

Infatti... non voglio tornare in Australia! Ci vuole una vita per vedere tutto e ci sono ancora tantissime ragazze italiane da incontrare...



Non basta una vita!

Che cosa dici, Stephen! Puoi tornare in Italia un'altra volta. Forse con la tua ragazza australiana... te la ricordi?

7

ABC Glossario

nomi

il confine	the border
l'esperienza	the experience
l'inizio	the beginning
il Papa	the Pope
le piste	the ski slopes
il sedere	the bottom, the backside
il viaggio	the trip

aggettivi

dolorante	sore, aching
tantissimo/a/i/e	many

avverbi

ancora	still
costantemente	constantly
spesso	often

verbi

sono andata	I went (<i>f</i>) (from andare —to go)
sono andato	I went (<i>m</i>) (from andare —to go)
sei andata	you went (<i>f</i>) (from andare —to go)
siamo andati	we went (from andare —to go)
siete andati	you (plural) went (from andare —to go)
siamo arrivati	we arrived (from arrivare —to arrive)
sono caduta	I fell (<i>f</i>) (from cadere —to fall)
sono entrata	I entered (<i>f</i>) (from entrare —to enter)
ho fatto	I did (from fare —to do/to make)



siete rimasti
sei riuscita
è stata
siamo stati
sono tornata
siamo usciti
abbiamo visto

you (plural) remained (from **rimanere**—to remain)
 you managed to (f) (from **riuscire**—to manage to)
 he/she/it was (from **stare**—to be/to stay)
 we stayed (from **stare**—to stay/to be)
 I returned (f) (from **tornare**—to return)
 we went out (from **uscire**—to go out)
 we saw (from **vedere**—to see)

altre espressioni e parole

beato/a te!
che peccato
ci vuole una vita
come vola il tempo!
infatti
macché!
non basta una vita!
pensiamo un po'
poverina!
te la ricordi?
un'altra volta
un paio di giorni dopo

lucky you!
 what a shame
 you need a lifetime
 how time flies!
 as a matter of fact
 of course not!
 a lifetime isn't long enough!
 let's think for a bit
 poor thing! (f)
 do you remember her?
 another time
 a couple of days later



la spiaggia

Attività 7.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Jessica has been to Rome, Venice and Genoa. | V | F |
| 2 | Jessica is a very capable skier. | V | F |
| 3 | Jessica went skiing on a mountain on the French border. | V | F |
| 4 | Alessandro says Monte Bianco is Italy's biggest mountain. | V | F |
| 5 | Stephen's most wonderful experience of the trip was entering St Peter's Basilica. | V | F |
| 6 | Stephen wants to stay in Italy to meet many more Italian girls. | V | F |



Investigazione Culturale



Il mare e la montagna

In the summer months in Italy (from **giugno** to **agosto**), you will find many Italians soaking up the sun and relaxing on the beach. Businesses within cities will often close for the month of August, as many Italians flock to the coast for a seaside holiday.



Italy's coastline stretches 7600 kilometres, with much of this area dedicated to beaches. Several Italian beaches are quite different to what most people are used to in Australia—those located along the Mediterranean coast are covered in **le rocce** (rocks). This does not stop local beachgoers though, who are more than happy to lie on the sun-kissed rocks.

Some of the most popular beachside towns in Italy include: Rimini and Riccione in the **Mare Adriatico** (Adriatic Sea), Sorrento and Amalfi in the **Mar Tirreno** (Tyrrhenian Sea) and of course the islands of Sicily, Sardinia and the smaller islands of Elba and Capri.

Many Australians would be shocked to discover that you often have to pay to spend time on some beaches in Italy! Access to the water itself is **gratis** (free), but if your beach experience involves **prendere il sole** (sunbathing), you will need to hire **una sdraio** (a sun bed) and **un ombrellone** (a beach umbrella) for the period you intend to stay at the beach.

During the winter months in Italy (from **dicembre** to **febbraio**), **le Alpi** (the Alps) in the north and **gli Appennini** (the Apennines) running down the centre of the country are occupied by tourists and locals for the snow holiday season.

Italy is covered by approximately 37 per cent of mountainous terrain, so it's not surprising that skiing is a popular winter sport. Italian families will often spend **la settimana bianca** (the week between Christmas and New Year's Day) on the ski slopes in places like Cervinia, Courmayeur, Cortina d'Ampezzo and Madonna di Campiglio.

For those of you who are **principianti** (beginners) when it comes to skiing, a word of advice—stay away from **le piste nere!** They are for **gli sciatori professionisti** (the professional skiers).

Cosa pensi ?

'To sunbathe' in Italian is **prendere il sole**. **Il sole** is 'the sun'. Can you think of any words in English that are similar to **sole** and are associated with the sun?



la montagna



il mare

Cosa pensi ?

Discuss the differences between Italian and Australian beaches with a partner.

- 1 Have you ever been to a beach like the one pictured on page 114? What differences can you see between beaches in Italy and beaches in Australia?
- 2 Have you ever been to a 'rocky' beach as opposed to a 'sandy' beach? Do you think that spending time at a rocky beach is a very different experience to a sandy beach?
- 3 Do you think you will ever be charged money to spend time at the beach in Australia? Why or why not? Explain your opinions.



Il passato prossimo (The past tense)

As we know, verbs tell us about actions that take place. Another feature of a verb is that it carries 'tense'; that is, it tells us *when* actions occur—in the present, in the past, or in the future. So far you have learnt how to express verbs in the present tense.

(io) mangio I eat/I am eating

(tu) giochi a calcio you play soccer/you are playing soccer

Let's have a look at another very important tense—the past tense. The past tense or 'the present perfect' as it is known in English grammar terminology, is used to talk about what someone did, or has done, in the past. In Italian, this tense is referred to as **il passato prossimo**.

Jessica and Stephen used **il passato prossimo** several times in the cartoon story, such as:

sono andato I went

siamo arrivati we arrived

The first thing you will notice from the examples above is that there are two verbs together. Both verbs have different purposes and we need to include both to form **il passato prossimo**.

The auxiliary verb essere

Essere has the role of an 'auxiliary verb' in the past tense; it is like a 'helper verb'. The form of **essere** tells us *who* has performed the action (i.e. who the *subject* of the verb is).

Esempi sono andato **sono** is the **io** form of **essere**, therefore 'I went'

siamo arrivati **siamo** is the **noi** form of **essere**, therefore 'we arrived'

Oggi vado a scuola
e ieri sono andato
a scuola!



Attività 7.2

Identify the correct subject pronoun according to who is performing the action. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio sei arrivato **a** lui **b** tu **c** io

1 sono caduta **a** io **b** noi **c** lei

2 sei tornata **a** lei **b** io **c** tu

3 siamo stati **a** noi **b** voi **c** loro

4 è riuscito **a** tu **b** lui **c** io

5 siete andati **a** loro **b** noi **c** voi



Formation of the past participle

We have established that we can work out *who* is performing the action by looking at **essere**, but how do we figure out *what* the action is? The second verb in constructing **il passato prossimo** is known as 'the past participle' (**il participio passato**) and it tells us exactly what the action was.

Esempi **sono andato** I went (from **andare**—to go)
siamo arrivati we arrived (from **arrivare**—to arrive)

To form the past participle, consider which type of verb you are dealing with. Is it a verb ending in **-are**, **-ere** or **-ire**? Then apply the following rules:

- are** → **-ato** **Esempio** **andare** → **andato** (went)
- ere** → **-uto** **Esempio** **cadere** → **caduto** (fell)
- ire** → **-ito** **Esempio** **uscire** → **uscito** (went out)

Handy hint

Notice that the subject pronouns (**io, tu, lui** etc.) are in brackets in front of the conjugated verbs? Just like when forming the present tense, the verbs tell us everything we need to know, so the subject pronouns are optional.

	-ARE verbs		-ERE verbs		-IRE verbs	
	andare	to go	cadere	to fall	uscire	to go out
singular	(io) sono andato/a	I went	(io) sono caduto/a	I fell	(io) sono uscito/a	I went out
	(tu) sei andato/a	you went	(tu) sei caduto/a	you fell	(tu) sei uscito/a	you went out
	(lui) è andato	he went	(lui) è caduto	he fell	(lui) è uscito	he went out
	(lei) è andata	she went	(lei) è caduta	she fell	(lei) è uscita	she went out
plural	(noi) siamo andati/e	we went	(noi) siamo caduti/e	we fell	(noi) siamo usciti/e	we went out
	(voi) siete andati/e	you went	(voi) siete caduti/e	you fell	(voi) siete usciti/e	you went out
	(loro) sono andati/e	they went	(loro) sono caduti/e	they fell	(loro) sono usciti/e	they went out

Attività 7.3



Listen to the sentences and, in your exercise book, write the past participles that you hear and what they mean in English.

Esempio **Caterina è andata a scuola.**

Answer: **andata** (went)

Attività 7.4



Listen to the conversation and identify which forms of **il passato prossimo** you hear. One has been done for you as an example.

- sei stato sono stato sono stata siamo partiti
- sono andato sono andata siamo arrivati siamo andati



Agreement of the past participle

Soon you'll be forming **il passato prossimo** in no time! There is one more important factor we need to consider. Look at the statements below made by Stephen and Jessica. What do you notice that is different about them?

Sono andato al liceo scientifico...



Sono andata in montagna...



Handy hint

How would you form a past participle if the action was performed by a group of males and females? If just one male is present in the group, you have to use the masculine plural ending **-i**—even if there is only one male among fifty females!

The endings of the past participles are different according to who has done the action. Past participles are like adjectives in this way as they must agree in *gender* and *number* with the subject.



If a male has performed the action, the ending will be **-o** (**andato**)



If a female has performed the action, the ending will be **-a** (**andata**)



If two or more males have performed the action, the ending will be **-i** (**andati**)



If two or more females have performed the action, the ending will be **-e** (**andate**)



Nathan e le ragazze sono usciti ieri sera.

Attività 7.5

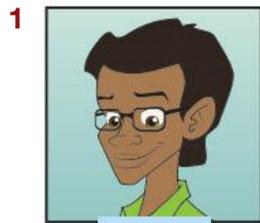
Write five sentences in your exercise book, joining words from each column, to create sentences in the past tense that agree in gender and number. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio Io sono andato a scuola.

1	Io (m)	è	andati	a scuola.
2	Tu (f)	sono	andata	in pizzeria.
3	Caterina	sono	andate	in palestra.
4	Paolo	sei	andato	a Venezia.
5	Stephen e Jessica	sono	andata	a Roma.
6	Melanie e Nina	è	andato	in gelateria.

Attività 7.6

Identify who has performed the actions out of the four possibilities below by looking at the ending of the past participles in each sentence. Write your answers in your exercise book.



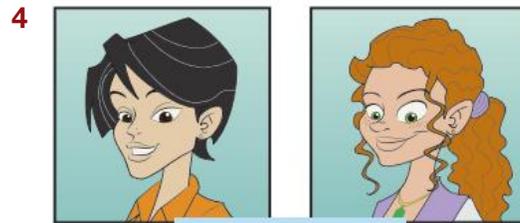
Nathan



Stephen e Alessandro



Nina



Melanie e Jessica

Esempio Stephen e Alessandro sono andati al mare a Rimini.

- a _____ è arrivata alle otto di mattina.
- b _____ è riuscito a sciare.
- c _____ sono stati in montagna per una settimana.
- d _____ sono uscite di sera.
- e _____ è andata in Francia per le vacanze.

Attività 7.7

Read the postcard and identify all the verbs written in **il passato prossimo**. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Cara Stefania,
 come stai? Io sto benissimo! Quanto mi piace l'estate! Quest'anno sono andata a Riccione con la mia famiglia. È stato molto divertente! Siamo rimasti in un albergo vicino al mare per due settimane. Ogni giorno sono andata in spiaggia e di sera sono uscita in discoteca o a mangiare con la famiglia. Però ieri siamo partiti, e adesso sono tornata a studiare. E tu? Dove sei andata per le vacanze?

Bacioni,
 Sienna



Stefania Piperno
 Via Bontempi 45
 55100 Pescara
 ITALIA

Handy hint

To make the negative of a past tense construction, simply put **non** in front of it, just as you would do for the present tense.

Esempio
Non sono andato in montagna.

I didn't go to the mountains.

Attività 7.8

Look at the list of things you were hoping to do today. Write five sentences in your exercise book, using **il passato prossimo**, stating whether you did or didn't complete the activities based on the tick or cross beside each item on the list. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio Non sono andato/a al Foro Romano.

Cose da fare/posti da vedere

- andare al Foro Romano
- andare alla Fontana di Trevi
- entrare nella Basilica di San Pietro
- tornare al Colosseo
- uscire con la nonna
- arrivare in pizzeria alle nove

Attività 7.9

For each photo, write a sentence in Italian indicating where the individual(s) listed beneath the image has/have gone using **andare** in **il passato prossimo**. There may be more than one way to interpret the photos. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio



Melanie

Melanie è andata a Venezia.

2



Paolo

4



Nathan e Akrim

1



Stephen

3



Nina e Alessandro

5



Jessica

Attività 7.10



Listen to the audio and note in your exercise book whether **andare** is used in the present or past tense for each sentence.

Esempio Vado in palestra ogni giorno.

Answer: **vado** = present tense



Il passato prossimo with essere

In reality, we don't always use **essere** as the auxiliary verb when forming **il passato prossimo**; we will look at another way to express the past tense in the next chapter.

Below is a list of sixteen verbs that use **essere** in **il passato prossimo**. Most of these verbs are related to movement like coming and going, entering and exiting, arriving and departing etc.

Infinitive		Past tense	
andare	to go	(io) sono andato/a	I went
arrivare	to arrive	(io) sono arrivato/a	I arrived
cadere	to fall	(io) sono caduto/a	I fell
diventare	to become	(io) sono diventato/a	I became
entrare	to enter	(io) sono entrato/a	I entered
essere	to be	(io) sono stato/a*	I was
morire	to die	(io) sono morto/a*	I died
nascere	to be born	(io) sono nato/a*	I was born
partire	to leave	(io) sono partito/a	I left
rimanere	to remain	(io) sono rimasto/a*	I remained
salire	to go up	(io) sono salito/a	I went up
scendere	to go down	(io) sono sceso/a*	I went down
stare	to stay/to be	(io) sono stato/a	I stayed/I was
tornare	to return	(io) sono tornato/a	I returned
uscire	to go out	(io) sono uscito/a	I went out
venire	to come	(io) sono venuto/a	I came

Handy hint

* These past participles are irregular and don't follow the normal pattern of conjugation. We will examine irregular past participles more closely in the next chapter.

Handy hint

To recall the verbs that require **essere** in **il passato prossimo**, you could visualise the happenings in a house. Picture a person arriving at the house (**arrivare**), another entering via the front door (**entrare**), someone exiting through the back door (**partire**) and another leaving to go to a party (**uscire**). You could continue using this visual aid to include all sixteen verbs that take **essere** with **il passato prossimo**.



le Dolomiti

La geografia italiana

The geography of a country influences many aspects of the lives of its inhabitants including lifestyle, social practices, economic industries and cuisine.

We know that Italy is covered by two significant mountain ranges (**le Alpi** and **gli Appennini**) and boasts a long coastline. We also know that Italy is a great deal smaller than Australia. What else do you know about Italy's geographical features? This table summarises some of the main facts.



il Lago di Como

La geografia d'Italia	
i mari (the seas)	il Mare Mediterraneo Sud: il Mar Ionio Est: il Mare Adriatico Ovest: il Mar Tirreno, il Mar Ligure
le montagne (the mountains)	le Alpi (il Monte Bianco—4810 metri) gli Appennini le Dolomiti
i laghi principali (the main lakes)	il Lago di Como il Lago di Garda il Lago Maggiore
le isole principali (the main islands)	la Sicilia la Sardegna
i fiumi principali (the main rivers)	il Po l'Arno il Tevere l'Adige
i vulcani (the volcanoes)	il Vesuvio l'Etna
il numero di regioni (the number of regions)	20
la capitale (the capital city)	Roma

Le regioni italiane

Not only are there obvious geographical divisions in Italy with islands and mountains separating landforms, but regional boundaries also exist to help govern the country—just as Australia is divided into states and territories. Each of Italy's twenty regions has a capital city, other main cities, and smaller towns and villages.

Each Italian region has something special and distinct to offer.



Some regions are known for their industries (as **Milano** in **Lombardia** is known for fashion) and other regions are renowned for their food produce (like **Sicilia** is famous for its sardines). Many regions also have incredible landscapes or natural wonders to display to the world (like **il Parco del Gran Paradiso** in **Piemonte**).

Cosa pensi ?

Use an atlas or the Internet to compare Italy's geographical features with those of Australia. What is different and what is similar? Think about how geography impacts on lifestyle, social practices, economic industries and cuisine. Discuss this with your class.

Tocca a te!

Look at the map of Italy's regions on page x and use the phrase **Dov'è...?** (Where is + name of region?) to ask a classmate to locate different regions on the map. Your partner will reply **Ecco...** (Here is + name of region.) while pointing to the region on the map. Take turns to ask and respond.

Investigazione Linguistica

Gli avverbi

Avverbi (adverbs) are words that modify a verb, an adjective or another adverb and can answer the question *how?*

Esempi How does Alessandro ski? Alessandro skis well.
 How does Stephen eat? Stephen eats slowly.
 How tall is Mt Etna? Mt Etna is very tall!

There are many different types of adverbs. In the cartoon story earlier in the chapter, Jessica used the adverb **costantemente** to describe how she fell to the ground while skiing.

In fact, you already use adverbs. In Chapter 5, you used the words **dritto** (straight) and **davanti** (in front of) as adverbs to describe how to get to places.

We can change adjectives into adverbs in English and Italian. To do this in English we often add the suffix *-ly*.

Esempio I am happy (adjective). I work happily (adverb).

To change adjectives into adverbs in Italian, we often add the suffix **-mente**. Depending on what type of adjective we are dealing with (what letter(s) it ends with), we usually have to change the adjective first.

Sono caduta per terra costantemente!





Stephen è andato via silenziosamente.

Adjective type	Steps to take to change to an adverb	Example
If the adjective ends in -o (masculine)	Change the adjective to the feminine form (-a) and add -mente	tranquillo ↓ tranquilla ↓ tranquill amente
If the adjective ends in -le or -re	Drop the final -e and add -mente	facile ↓ facil_ ↓ facil mente
If the adjective ends in -e	Simply add -mente	paziente ↓ pazient emente

It is important to note that in Italian, adverbs are usually placed *after* the verb.

Esempi Jessica è caduta **costantemente**.
Jessica fell constantly.

Melanie è arrivata velocemente.
Melanie arrived quickly.

Attività 7.11



Listen to the audio and match the activity each person is doing (in the left column) with how they are performed (in the right column). One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio Caterina studia l'inglese

lentamente.

1 Alessandro parla italiano

felicemente.

2 Sono caduto

attentamente.

3 Stephen mangia

pazientemente.

4 Sei andata al cinema

facilmente.

5 Mia madre mi ascolta

recentemente.

6 Nathan e Stephen giocano a calcio

rapidamente.



Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs can also be used to answer the questions *when?* or *how often?* We can use adverbs of frequency to explain how often we do different activities.

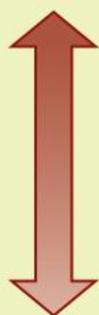
Esempi **Vado in montagna raramente.**

I rarely go to the mountains.

Gioco a tennis regolarmente.

I play tennis regularly.

Not all adverbs of frequency end with **-mente**. Here are some examples.



Most frequently

sempre always

spesso often

qualche volta sometimes

non... mai never

Least frequently

Adverbs are invariable, which means they don't change form at all and like the adverbs we used previously, adverbs of frequency are usually placed *after* the verb in Italian.

Esempi

Bevi sempre il caffè? Do you always drink coffee?

Mangio spesso i cornetti. I often eat croissants.

Gioco qualche volta a pallacanestro. I sometimes play basketball.

Non vado mai in montagna. I never go to the mountains.

Vanno spesso a sciare d'inverno.



Handy hint

Although adverbs of frequency are usually placed after the verb in Italian, this is not always the case in English. For example, in English you can't say: 'I eat often croissants.' You have to place the adverb of frequency *before* the verb 'eat'.

Attività 7.12

Write complete Italian sentences in your exercise book indicating how frequently you do each of the activities listed below, using adverbs of frequency (i.e. **sempre**, **spesso**, **qualche volta**, **non... mai** etc.).

Esempio giocare a pallacanestro → **Gioco spesso a pallacanestro.**

1 leggere libri

4 studiare la matematica

2 preparare la cena

5 suonare uno strumento

3 andare al mare

6 andare al cinema



Italian dialects

Did you know that Italian is called a 'Romance language'? This doesn't mean that it is a romantic language (although many people think it has a romantic sound to it!). The 'Romance languages' are those that originate from Latin. Other Romance languages are French, Portuguese, Romanian and Spanish. The English language also adopted many words from Latin and this is why there are similarities between Italian and English words.

Many Italian **dialetti** (dialects) also stem from Latin. A dialect is a variation of a standard language. It can be different in the words that it uses, the grammar rules it applies and the pronunciation of words. Dialects can vary significantly from one region to the next and can result in Italians from different regions finding it hard to understand each other!

Why do all of these dialects exist? The answer to that question lies in Italian history. Latin was the official language of Rome in the time of the Roman Empire. When the Roman Empire fell in 476 CE, Italy came under the rule of many different countries. The country was divided into separate city states and each region was greatly impacted upon by the various invaders who occupied the land. Language evolved under the influence of the foreign conquerors and each region developed its own dialect.

When the unification of Italy occurred in 1861, it was decided that a unified country needed a common language. The Tuscan dialect was chosen because **Firenze** was such an important city from a cultural point of view during that time. And so the standard 'Italian' language was born!

In modern Italy, dialects are still spoken, more frequently by older Italians than young people and they are stronger in some regions than others. The influence of radio and television and an increase in travelling between regions has meant that standard Italian is generally spoken among the population. However, dialects still have a place in Italian society and contribute to a sense of regional pride among Italians.

Cosa pensi ?

Do you know of any regional language differences that exist in Australia? Are there any words, phrases or expressions that are used in particular states or territories? For example, a corner store that sells basic groceries and household items is known as a 'milk bar' in Victoria and New South Wales, but is generally referred to as a 'deli' in Western Australia and South Australia. Can you think of any other examples like this?

Parli italiano?



Sì, ma parlo anche il mio dialetto, il calabrese!

Ripasso

- 1 Translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.
- a Serena went to the movies last night.
 - b We left the hotel this morning.
 - c I entered St Mark's Basilica in Venice.
 - d Sonia and Zoe went out last night.
 - e Nathaniel and I managed to ski in the mountains.

- 3 Imagine that you have just spent the day in Rome. Write a diary entry saying where you went (include at least five places) using **andare in il passato prossimo**.

Caro diario,
oggi è stato un giorno favoloso!
Sono andato/a al Colosseo...



- 2 Change these adjectives into adverbs. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio certo → **certamente**

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| a particolare | e rapido |
| b felice | f intelligente |
| c timido | g chiaro |
| d sincero | h possibile |

- 4 Change the sentences below from the present tense into **il passato prossimo** by modifying the verbs that have been underlined. The gender, where appropriate, has also been indicated in brackets. Write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio Vado al cinema con Roberto. (m)
Sono andato al cinema con Roberto.

- a Arrivo a Roma alle dieci di mattina. (f)
- b Vai in montagna a sciare? (m)
- c A che ora tornate a casa? (f)
- d Partiamo presto per Venezia. (m)
- e Alessandro entra nel museo.
- f Melinda cade per terra regolarmente.
- g Le nonne arrivano presto.
- h I ragazzi sono a scuola.

- 5 Use the legend and the pictures of dice to figure out how frequently the activities listed are performed by the people in brackets. Write complete Italian sentences in your exercise book for each activity. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio andare al mare (io)



Vado qualche volta al mare.

a fare i compiti (Luca)



c mangiare la pasta (loro)



b lavorare in giardino (tu)



d andare in treno (Bruno e Luigi)



Legend



sempre

spesso



qualche volta



non... mai



Riassunto

Now you can:

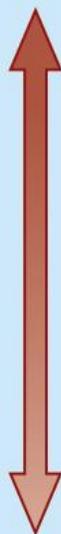
talk about past events and experiences using the past tense (**il passato prossimo**)

	-ARE verbs		-ERE verbs		-IRE verbs	
	andare	to go	cadere	to fall	uscire	to go out
singular	(io) sono andato/a (tu) sei andato/a (lui) è andato (lei) è andata	I went you went he went she went	(io) sono caduto/a (tu) sei caduto/a (lui) è caduto (lei) è caduta	I fell you fell he fell she fell	(io) sono uscito/a (tu) sei uscito/a (lui) è uscito (lei) è uscita	I went out you went out he went out she went out
plural	(noi) siamo andati/e (voi) siete andati/e (loro) sono andati/e	we went you went they went	(noi) siamo caduti/e (voi) siete caduti/e (loro) sono caduti/e	we fell you fell they fell	(noi) siamo usciti/e (voi) siete usciti/e (loro) sono usciti/e	we went out you went out they went out

use **essere** with certain verbs to form **il passato prossimo**

Infinitive		Past tense	
andare	to go	(io) sono andato/a	I went
arrivare	to arrive	(io) sono arrivato/a	I arrived
cadere	to fall	(io) sono caduto/a	I fell
diventare	to become	(io) sono diventato/a	I became
entrare	to enter	(io) sono entrato/a	I entered
essere	to be	(io) sono stato/a	I was
morire	to die	(io) sono morto/a	I died
nascere	to be born	(io) sono nato/a	I was born
partire	to leave	(io) sono partito/a	I left
rimanere	to remain	(io) sono rimasto/a	I remained
salire	to go up	(io) sono salito/a	I went up
scendere	to go down	(io) sono sceso/a	I went down
stare	to stay/to be	(io) sono stato/a	I stayed/I was
tornare	to return	(io) sono tornato/a	I returned
uscire	to go out	(io) sono uscito/a	I went out
venire	to come	(io) sono venuto/a	I came

use adverbs of frequency to express how often you do activities



Most frequently

sempre always

spesso often

qualche volta sometimes

non... mai never

Least frequently

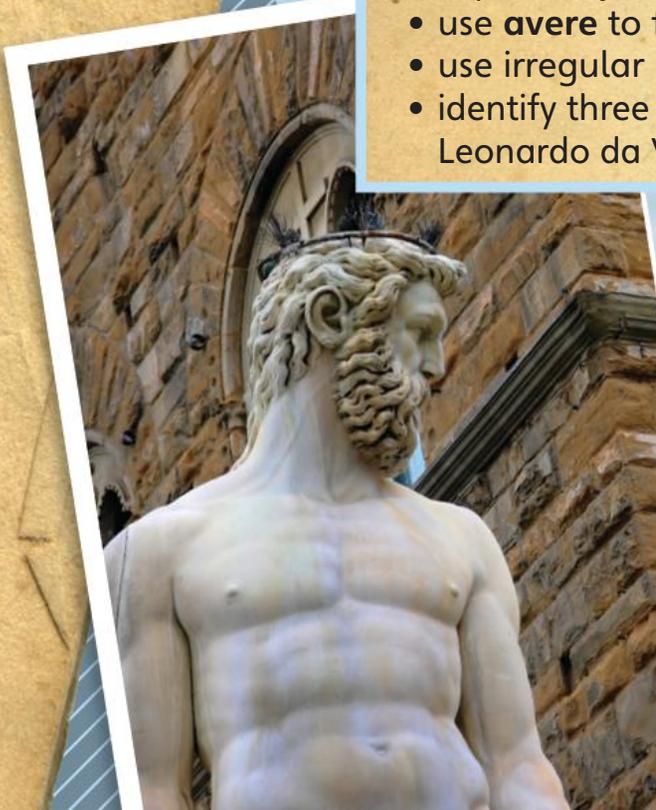
use adverbs to express how you do activities

Adjective type	Steps to take to change to an adverb	Example
If the adjective ends in -o (masculine)	Change the adjective to the feminine form (-a) and add -mente	tranquillamente
If the adjective ends in -le or -re	Drop the final -e and add -mente	facilmente
If the adjective ends in -e	Simply add -mente	pazientemente

Firenze: la città d'arte

You will learn how to:

- recognise the significance of **Firenze** and the cultural revolution of the Renaissance
- express **il passato prossimo** with reflexive verbs
- use **avere** to form **il passato prossimo**
- use irregular past participles
- identify three important Italian personalities—
Leonardo da Vinci, Dante Alighieri and Galileo Galilei.



Un giorno a Firenze



Akrim and Melanie went on a day trip to explore the city of Firenze. Upon their return, Akrim caught up with Jessica to tell her all about his 'date' with Melanie!

1 Perché sei così felice, Akrim?

La settimana scorsa Melanie mi ha telefonato e mi ha invitato a passare un giorno con lei a Firenze. Sono appena tornato... che giorno stupendo!

2 Com'è andato l'appuntamento? Hai fatto bella figura?

Come no! Mi sono alzato prestissimo per non essere in ritardo, mi sono vestito in modo molto elegante e mi sono pettinato con grande cura.

Bene! E poi?

3 Ci siamo incontrati sul famoso Ponte Vecchio, davanti alla prima gioielleria.

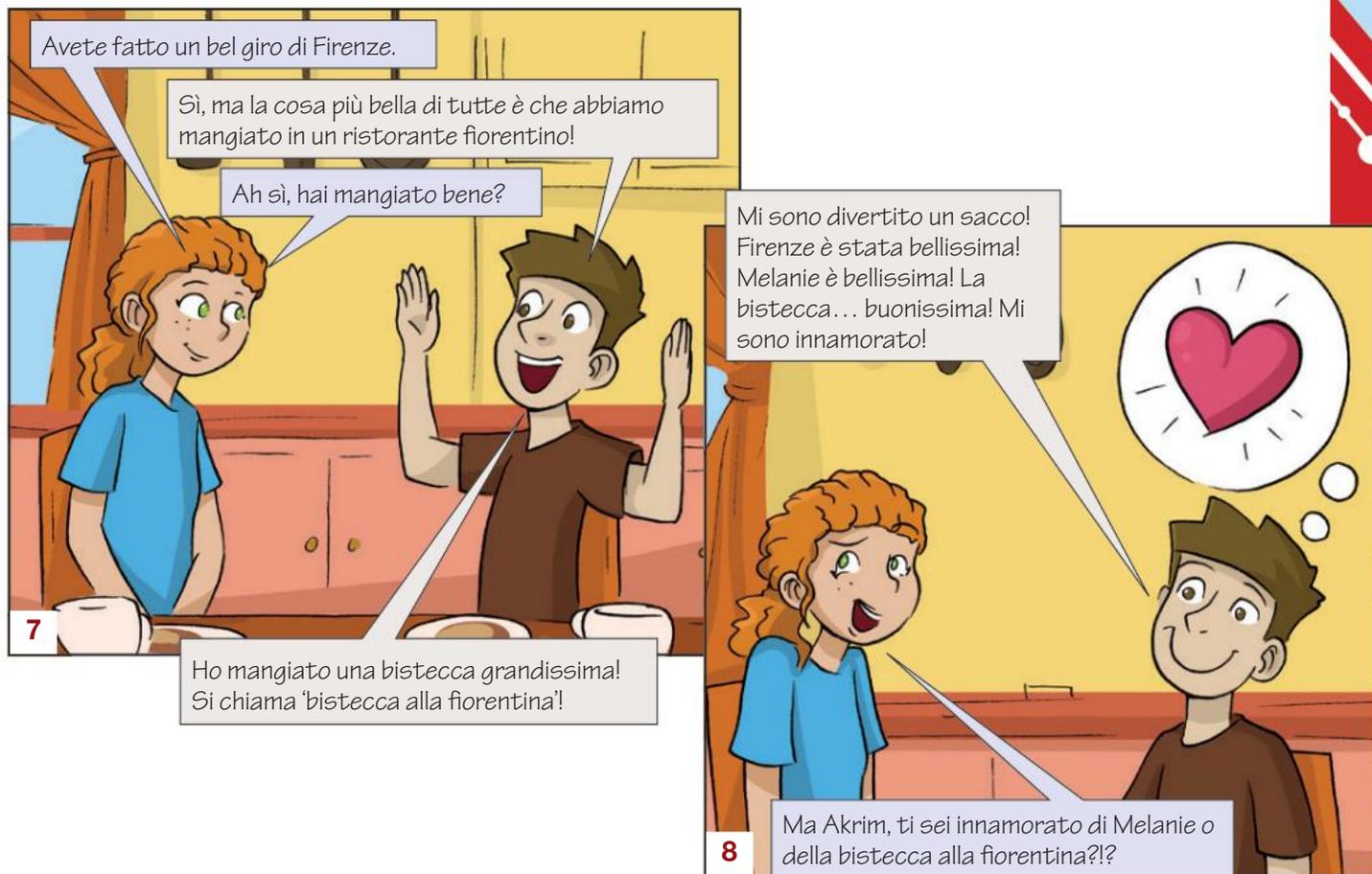
Che bello! Hai comprato qualcosa? Forse un regalo per Melanie o...?

4 No! Le collane d'oro costano un occhio della testa!

Sono bellissime lo stesso! Non importa... allora, come avete passato il giorno?

5 Siamo andati alla Galleria degli Uffizi e abbiamo visto *La nascita di Venere* e *La Primavera* di Botticelli. Siamo andati al Palazzo Vecchio e abbiamo visto la Loggia dei Lanzi nella Piazza della Signoria.

6 Siamo andati anche all'Accademia e abbiamo visto la statua di David. A Melanie piace tanto l'arte. Io invece mi sono annoiato un po' dopo quattro o cinque ore!



ABC Glossario

nomi

l'appuntamento	the date, the appointment
le collane	the necklaces
il ristorante	the restaurant
la statua	the statue

aggettivi

appena	just
grandissimo/a/i/e	very big
fiorentino/a	Florentine
scorso/a	last, past

avverbio

prestissimo/a/i/e	very early
--------------------------	------------

verbi

mi sono alzato	I got up (<i>m</i>) (from alzarsi —to get up)
mi sono annoiato	I got bored (<i>m</i>) (from annoarsi —to get bored)



hai comprato	you bought (from comprare —to buy)
mi sono divertito	I enjoyed myself (<i>m</i>) (from divertirsi —to enjoy oneself)
essere in ritardo	to be late
avete fatto	you (plural) did (from fare —to do)
ci siamo incontrati	we met (from incontrarsi —to meet)
mi sono innamorato	I've fallen in love (<i>m</i>) (from innamorarsi —to fall in love)
ti sei innamorato	you've fallen in love (<i>m</i>) (from innamorarsi —to fall in love)
ha invitato	he/she/it invited (from invitare —to invite)
ho mangiato	I ate (from mangiare —to eat)
hai mangiato	you ate (from mangiare —to eat)
abbiamo mangiato	we ate (from mangiare —to eat)
passare	to spend time
avete passato	you (plural) spent time (from passare —to spend time)
mi sono pettinato	I brushed my hair (<i>m</i>) (from pettinarsi —to brush one's hair)
mi ha telefonato	she telephoned me (from telefonare —to telephone)
mi sono vestito	I got dressed (<i>m</i>) (from vestirsi —to get dressed)
abbiamo visto	we saw (from vedere —to see)

altre espressioni e parole

com'è andato...	how did it go ...
come no!	of course!
con grande cura	with great care
costano un occhio della testa d'oro	they are really expensive (literally: 'they cost an eye') of gold
hai fatto bella figura?	did you make a good impression?
in modo	in a way
lo stesso	the same
mi sono divertito un sacco	I enjoyed myself a lot
non importa	never mind, it doesn't matter

Attività 8.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Which of these statements are **veri** and which are **falsi**?

- | | | | |
|----------|--|----------|----------|
| 1 | Melanie invited Akrim to spend a day with her in Florence. | V | F |
| 2 | Akrim didn't really try to make a good impression. | V | F |
| 3 | Melanie and Akrim met at the Uffizi Gallery. | V | F |
| 4 | Akrim bought Melanie a gold necklace. | V | F |
| 5 | <i>La nascita di Venere</i> is an artwork by Botticelli. | V | F |
| 6 | Akrim ate a very small steak at the Florentine restaurant. | V | F |



Firenze

Firenze (Florence) is located in the region of **Toscana** (Tuscany). It is one of the most frequently visited cities in Italy and is considered a great artistic centre. **Firenze** is situated on **l'Arno** (the Arno River) and all the city's major historic and artistic sights are within a short walking distance from each other.

An easily recognisable attraction is **Santa Maria del Fiore**—a cathedral crowned by the amazing dome created by artist and architect Filippo Brunelleschi over 600 years ago. Brunelleschi's dome was an extraordinary engineering feat and is still the largest ever constructed using bricks and mortar.

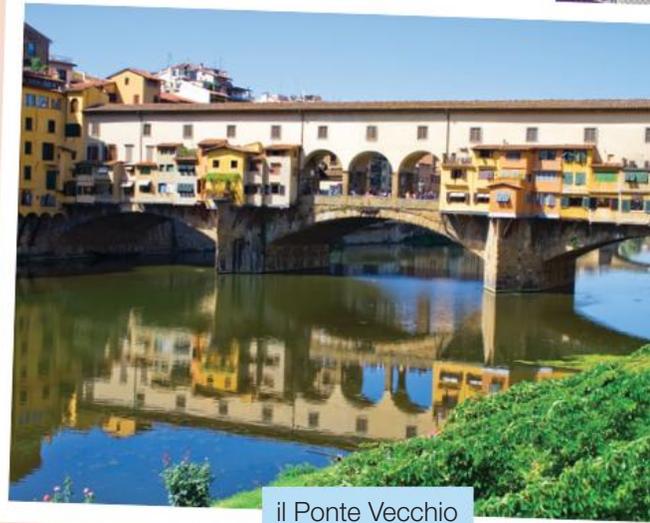
Firenze was severely damaged during the Second World War, yet **il Ponte Vecchio** (the 'Old' Bridge) was the only bridge that was not destroyed. This popular tourist attraction is a great place to buy jewellery as it is lined with many **gioiellerie** (jewellery shops). Initially, butchers used to run their businesses on **il ponte**. However, in the sixteenth century, a ruling Florentine family decided to replace the butchers with jewellery stores to get rid of the unpleasant smell of meat!

Another Florentine tourist experience, that vegetarians or those with small appetites should avoid, is to try **la bistecca alla fiorentina**, a massive piece of quality steak, usually shared between two people and cooked rare.

Firenze has been home to many great artists, writers and intellectuals. It is estimated that approximately 60 per cent of the most important art pieces in the world are found in Italy, and that close to half of these works are in **Firenze**.



il duomo di Santa Maria del Fiore



il Ponte Vecchio



Hai lo stomaco per mangiare una bistecca alla fiorentina?



Una gioielleria sul Ponte Vecchio

Attività 8.2

Unscramble these Italian words and phrases that relate to **Firenze** and write an English translation and brief summary in your exercise book about each term. Take note, the definite articles have been included to make it extra challenging.

- 1 noltasaca
- 2 Inora
- 3 civelptecionoh
- 4 Icroaseaaltifafienintabc
- 5 oleriegjielel



Cosa pensi ?

Is the idea of **fare bella/brutta figura** something that is purely Italian? Is there anything like it in Australia?



Investigazione Culturale

Fare bella/brutta figura

Italians are known to be a style-conscious population and with this characteristic comes a certain level of self-confidence.

Fare bella figura (to make a good impression) is an Italian concept that encompasses the idea of 'keeping up appearances'—being well presented and knowing how to behave appropriately. However, **fare bella figura** can't be so simply defined; it is as much about being well dressed as it is about having the right attitude. Essentially, **fare bella figura** is about presenting your very best to the world.

Something to be avoided is **fare brutta figura** (to make a bad impression). **Brutta** translates to 'ugly', and **fare brutta figura** is about showing a lack of sophistication and a lack of understanding. Saying something embarrassing is an example of **fare brutta figura**.



Investigazione Linguistica

Il passato prossimo with reflexive verbs

As you can tell from his description, Akrim took great care to prepare himself for his 'date' with Melanie:

Mi sono alzato prestissimo per non essere in ritardo.

Mi sono vestito in modo molto elegante.

Mi sono pettinato con grande cura.

Do you recognise parts of these statements? Perhaps you remember using reflexive verbs like **alzarsi**, **vestirsi** and



pettinarsi and the pronoun **mi** in Chapter 1 to talk about your daily routine. You may also identify from your learning in Chapter 7 that **alzato**, **vestito** and **pettinato** are 'past participles' and they are used when expressing a past action. **Sono** is a form of **essere** and when it is in front of a past participle it is a combination that forms **il passato prossimo**. In Akrim's statements, we are dealing with reflexive verbs in the past tense.

Reflexive verbs require us to follow the same procedure as we do for other verbs in the past tense. However, just as we do in the present tense, we must be sure to include the reflexive pronoun in front of the verb.

	divertirsi	to enjoy oneself
singular	(io) mi sono divertito/a	I enjoyed myself
	(tu) ti sei divertito/a	you enjoyed yourself
	(lui/lei) si è divertito/a	he/she enjoyed himself/herself
plural	(noi) ci siamo divertiti/e	we enjoyed ourselves
	(voi) vi siete divertiti/e	you enjoyed yourselves
	(loro) si sono divertiti/e	they enjoyed themselves

Here are some more reflexive verbs that you might use with **il passato prossimo**.

Infinitive		Past tense
addormentarsi	to fall asleep	mi sono addormentato/a
annoiarsi	to get bored	mi sono annoiato/a
arrabbiarsi	to get angry	mi sono arrabbiato/a
incontrarsi	to meet	mi sono incontrato/a
innamorarsi	to fall in love	mi sono innamorato/a
prepararsi	to prepare oneself	mi sono preparato/a
spogliarsi	to undress oneself	mi sono spogliato/a



Handy hint

As you have already learnt, we can recognise reflexive verbs by their **-si** endings when they are written in the infinitive. We use reflexive verbs for actions that *reflect back* onto the subject (the person who is performing the action) e.g. **mi lavo** (I wash *myself*).

Attività 8.3



Listen to the audio and write the five past tense constructions you hear in your exercise book. Note whether each is a reflexive or a non-reflexive verb.

Esempio **Mi sono addormentata velocemente.**

Answer: **mi sono addormentata** (reflexive)



Il passato prossimo with avere

We now know that reflexive verbs use **essere** as the auxiliary verb when forming **il passato prossimo**. We also know that there are other verbs that take **essere** when constructing past participles (e.g. **andare** → **sono andato**).

There is one last category of past tense phrases to consider. In the cartoon story, Akrim and Jessica made the following statements in **il passato prossimo** when chatting about Akrim's trip to **Firenze** with Melanie.

Akrim:

...Melanie mi **ha telefonato** e mi **ha invitato** a passare un giorno con lei...

...**abbiamo mangiato** in un ristorante fiorentino!

Jessica:

Hai fatto bella figura?

Hai comprato qualcosa?

...come **avete passato** il giorno?

What do you notice about the past tense phrases highlighted in red? Think about all the past tense constructions we have put together so far. How do these differ?

If you noticed that the first part of the construction is made up of the verb **avere** rather than **essere**, then you have figured out the difference! When forming the past tense, **avere** is used much more frequently as an auxiliary verb than **essere**. Do you recall the suggestion to remember verbs that use **essere** in **il passato prossimo** on page 121? If you can remember those verbs then you can deduce that most other verbs will use **avere** to form **il passato prossimo**!

Let's look at forming **il passato prossimo** using **avere** as the auxiliary verb.

The subject pronoun of the verb

The first step is to work out who is the subject of the verb—who is the person doing the action? This will tell us which form of **avere** to include as the auxiliary verb.

Esempi

ho telefonato → subject = **io** → verb = **ho** (I have)

abbiamo incontrato → subject = **noi** → verb = **abbiamo** (we have)

Ho pensato che devo usare 'avere' nel passato prossimo per questa frase!



Handy hint

Remember that when forming **il passato prossimo** with a verb that requires **essere**, you have to make sure that the past participle agrees with the subject. This does not happen with an **avere** construction—gender and number agreement is not required.

Esempi

Melanie **è andata** a Firenze e **ha incontrato** Akrim.

Akrim **è andato** a Firenze e **ha incontrato** Melanie.



The past participle

Next we look at the past participle to tell us what the action was. It is formed the same way as an **essere** construction. That is:

-are → **-ato** **Esempio** **mangiare** → **mangiato** (ate)

-ere → **-uto** **Esempio** **vendere** → **venduto** (sold)

-ire → **-ito** **Esempio** **dormire** → **dormito** (slept)

And when forming **il passato prossimo** with a verb that requires **avere** ... that's all you have to do!



Melanie e Jessica **sono andate** in piazza e **hanno incontrato** Alessandro e Nathan.

	-ARE verbs		-ERE verbs		-IRE verbs	
	mangiare	to eat	vendere	to sell	dormire	to sleep
singular	(io) ho mangiato (tu) hai mangiato (lui/lei) ha mangiato	I ate you ate he/she/it ate	(io) ho venduto (tu) hai venduto (lui/lei) ha venduto	I sold you sold he/she/it sold	(io) ho dormito (tu) hai dormito (lui/lei) ha dormito	I slept you slept he/she/it slept
plural	(noi) abbiamo mangiato (voi) avete mangiato (loro) hanno mangiato	we ate you ate they ate	(noi) abbiamo venduto (voi) avete venduto (loro) hanno venduto	we sold you sold they sold	(noi) abbiamo dormito (voi) avete dormito (loro) hanno dormito	we slept you slept they slept

Attività 8.4

In your exercise book, write the past participles for these infinitives. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio parlare → parlato

1 incontrare

5 capire

2 dovere

6 volere

3 finire

7 ballare

4 cantare

8 preferire



Il Rinascimento e i Medici



The Medici crest

Il Rinascimento (Renaissance) was a historic period of great importance for Italy and Europe. It took place roughly from the fourteenth century to the mid-sixteenth century. **Rinascimento** means 're-birth', as Europe was 'born again' with an explosion of creativity in artistic and intellectual endeavours. Politics, philosophy, literature, art, science and architecture were explored in new and exciting ways. It was a stimulating time of discovery!

Firenze became a city of considerable cultural and artistic importance during **il Rinascimento**. The Medici family is credited with being responsible for **Firenze's** reputation as one of the world's most wondrous artistic centres.

I Medici ruled **Firenze** from the fourteenth to the eighteenth century. Their family coat of arms is a golden background with a blue circle containing **il Giglio** (the symbol of **Firenze**) and five red circles, thought to represent coins and making reference to their banking background. The crest is found on many buildings in **Firenze** and is a constant reminder of their impact on the city.

I Medici became patrons of many Renaissance artists who were commissioned to decorate public and private buildings. It was **Lorenzo de' Medici** who took patronage of the arts to a whole new level. Lorenzo sponsored artists like Michelangelo, Botticelli, and Leonardo whose art lives on in museums and buildings throughout **Firenze** and Italy.

Firenze's Piazza della Signoria was the main civic square in the days of the Medici family. The **piazza** now houses a magnificent open-air sculpture gallery known as the **Loggia dei Lanzi**.

Firenze is also home to the **Palazzo Vecchio**, formally known as **Palazzo della Signoria**, which was a lodging for **la signoria** (the local government) during Renaissance times.

The **Palazzo Vecchio** was attached to **gli uffizi**—the offices where the government conducted their important daily business of ruling **Firenze**. Today this is known as **la Galleria degli Uffizi**, which houses several of the world's most beautiful artistic masterpieces.



This painting, known as the *School of Athens*, depicts many important Renaissance figures.



Irregular past participles

As with most verb forms, there are some exceptions and irregularities. Examine this extract from a newspaper article about a special event at **la Galleria degli Uffizi** to see past tense structures with **essere** and **avere**, as well as some irregular verbs that don't follow the same pattern as regular verbs when forming past participles.

Gli Uffizi celebrano Leonardo

Ieri la Galleria degli Uffizi ha aperto alle sette di mattina e ha chiuso alle otto di sera. L'orario è stato cambiato per una mostra che celebra la vita e i lavori di Leonardo da Vinci.

Una studentessa australiana, Melanie Chong, è venuta alla mostra e ha detto: 'Ho visto tanti capolavori! Ho imparato tanto sulla vita di Leonardo da Vinci. È stato molto interessante!'



Cosa pensi ?

The Renaissance period was like a revolution of thought resulting in many important advances in intellectual and artistic fields. Art was of huge importance in the days of the Medici family as it showed cultural understanding, wealth and above all, greatness. If you were a ruler of a city state today, what revolution would you encourage? Which individuals in our modern society would you sponsor in their field of expertise?



ABC Glossario

nomi

i capolavori	the masterpieces
i lavori	the works
la mostra	the display
la studentessa	the student (f)
la vita	the life

avverbio

ieri	yesterday
-------------	-----------

verbi

ha aperto	he/she/it opened (from aprire —to open)
celebrano	they celebrate (from celebrare —to celebrate)
ha chiuso	he/she/it closed (from chiudere —to close)
ha detto	he/she/it said (from dire —to say/to tell)
ho imparato	I learnt (from imparare —to learn)
ho visto	I saw (from vedere —to see)

altra espressione

l'orario è stato cambiato	the schedule was changed
----------------------------------	--------------------------



The table below contains a list of several irregular past participles. Some verbs you will recognise, others will be new. Look at what they mean in English and their form of past tense. Note that some of these irregular verbs use **essere** as their auxiliary verb and others use **avere** (shaded in blue).

Infinitive		Past tense	
aprire	to open	(io) ho aperto	I opened
chiedere	to ask	(io) ho chiesto	I asked
chiudere	to close	(io) ho chiuso	I closed
decidere	to decide	(io) ho deciso	I decided
dire	to say	(io) ho detto	I said
fare	to do	(io) ho fatto	I did
leggere	to read	(io) ho letto	I read
mettere	to put	(io) ho messo	I put
perdere	to lose	(io) ho perso	I lost
prendere	to take	(io) ho preso	I took
rispondere	to respond	(io) ho risposto	I responded
scrivere	to write	(io) ho scritto	I wrote
vedere	to see	(io) ho visto	I saw
essere	to be	(io) sono stato/a	I was/I stayed
nascere	to be born	(io) sono nato/a	I was born
rimanere	to remain	(io) sono rimasto/a	I remained
scendere	to go down	(io) sono sceso/a	I went down



Attività 8.5

Construct sentences using the information below by changing the verbs according to the subjects listed. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

- Esempio** **dire** la verità: **a** io **b** Stephen **c** voi
a Io **ho detto** la verità.
b Stephen **ha detto** la verità.
c Voi **avete detto** la verità.

- 1** **perdere** il treno: **a** tu **b** Io e Antonio **c** Laura e Paolo
2 **scrivere** un'email: **a** i ragazzi **b** Tu e Nathan **c** tu
3 **vedere** la statua di David: **a** Akrim **b** voi **c** io

Attività 8.6

Use the phrases in the following grid to create a dialogue with a partner. You will need to choose phrases from the options in each row and column. Remember to listen to your partner's answers before choosing your responses.

A	Dove sei	andato andata	oggi?
----------	----------	------------------	-------

B	Sono	andato andata	a Firenze. a Roma.
----------	------	------------------	-----------------------

A	Hai visto	il Ponte Vecchio? il Colosseo?
----------	-----------	-----------------------------------

B	Sì, e ho visto anche	la Galleria degli Uffizi. Piazza di Spagna.
----------	----------------------	--

A	Fantastico! E poi, che cos'hai fatto di bello?		
----------	--	--	--

B	Ho mangiato una	bistecca alla fiorentina! pizza buonissima!
----------	-----------------	--

A	Allora, ti sei	divertito divertita	oggi?
----------	----------------	------------------------	-------

B	Sì, mi sono	divertito divertita	un sacco!
----------	-------------	------------------------	-----------

Attività 8.7

There are six past tense structures in the passage below containing both regular and irregular past participles. Identify the past tense phrases and write in your exercise book which are regular and which are irregular.

Esempio ho dipinto (irregular)

Chi sono?

*Sono nato vicino a Vinci, nel 1452. Ho cominciato la mia carriera come artista all'età di quattordici anni. Ho lavorato con il grande artista Andrea del Verrocchio. Ho dipinto molti capolavori come **La Gioconda**. Ho disegnato e ho scritto le mie idee nei libretti che oggi sono famosi. Ho la barba lunga... chi sono?*



Did you figure out who the mystery person is? Read ahead to find out!



Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519)



Leonardo da Vinci is known as a 'Renaissance man'—he was an accomplished painter, sculptor, artist, engineer, inventor, architect, writer, musician ... As you can gather from his impressive résumé, he had a great variety of talents!

Born near the town of Vinci, Leonardo moved to **Firenze** at the age of about fourteen to work as an apprentice to a well-known artist of the time, Andrea del Verrocchio. This was the beginning of a brilliant career, which included working for the Medici family and the King of France.

Leonardo created several famous works of art, such as the *Mona Lisa* (known in Italy as **La Gioconda**), *L'Ultima cena* (*The Last Supper*) and his sketch of the *Vitruvian Man*.

He recorded his thoughts and ideas in notebooks, approximately twenty of which have been located and contain extraordinary sketches of machines and inventions. Many of Leonardo's inventions and scientific ideas were so advanced that they were centuries ahead of their time. He sketched models of aircraft, including the prototype of a helicopter.

Leonardo da Vinci's influence on the artistic world also lived on beyond his years. His work was a great inspiration for the next generation of Italy's leading artists, including Michelangelo and Raphael.

Cosa pensi ?

Did you notice anything particular about Leonardo da Vinci's name and where he was born? Had you heard of Leonardo da Vinci before? Can you think of any series of books or films that refer to his work?



Tocca a te!

Make up five questions in Italian to ask a partner about Leonardo da Vinci. Take it in turns to ask each other your questions and keep a record of how many answers you and your partner get right!

Esempi 1 Quando è nato Leonardo da Vinci?

2 Come si chiama uno dei capolavori che Leonardo da Vinci ha dipinto?



Dante Alighieri (1265–1321)

Dante Alighieri was a poet and is probably the most famous Italian writer ever known. You could say he is Italy's version of the great William Shakespeare! He lived in the thirteenth century, over 700 years ago, yet his work is still studied in universities worldwide and in many Italian high schools. He is admired by Italians and people all over the world.

Dante was born in **Firenze** and lived there in a time of significant political confusion. His involvement in the city state's political affairs eventually saw him banished from his beloved **Firenze** and he composed his most famous written work while in exile—**La Divina Commedia** (*The Divine Comedy*).

Dante's masterpiece was made up of three volumes that explored his imagined journey through **l'Inferno** (*Hell*), **il Purgatorio** (*Purgatory*) and **il Paradiso** (*Heaven*). In **La Divina Commedia**, Dante presents his vision of Florentine society; he discusses injustices and his concerns about the city that seemed obsessed with wealth and power.

Dante's guide throughout **il Paradiso** is Beatrice, a woman that Dante saw when he was only nine years of age, but who captivated him so much that she became his muse and the inspiration for much of his work. Sadly Beatrice was never destined to be his love. **Che romantico!**



Handy hint

Have you noticed how Dante's last name is spelt with a double 'l' in the inscription on his statue? That was the way it was spelt at the time the statue was built.

Attività 8.8

Read the statements below and identify whether they describe Leonardo da Vinci or Dante Alighieri. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 È nato nel 1452. | 5 Si è innamorato di Beatrice. |
| 2 Ha scritto <i>La Divina Commedia</i> . | 6 Ha lavorato per la famiglia Medici. |
| 3 È nato a Firenze. | 7 Ha dipinto <i>L'Ultima cena</i> . |
| 4 È nato vicino a Vinci. | 8 Ha disegnato e scritto idee nei libretti. |

Cosa pensi ?

Dante's journey in the underworld was inspired by events he lived and is considered to be his message for the society of the time. Do you think literature, in general, is influenced by society and life, or is it the other way around?

Cosa pensi ?

Can you think of at least one other famous Italian couple whose love story is well known and has been widely documented throughout history?



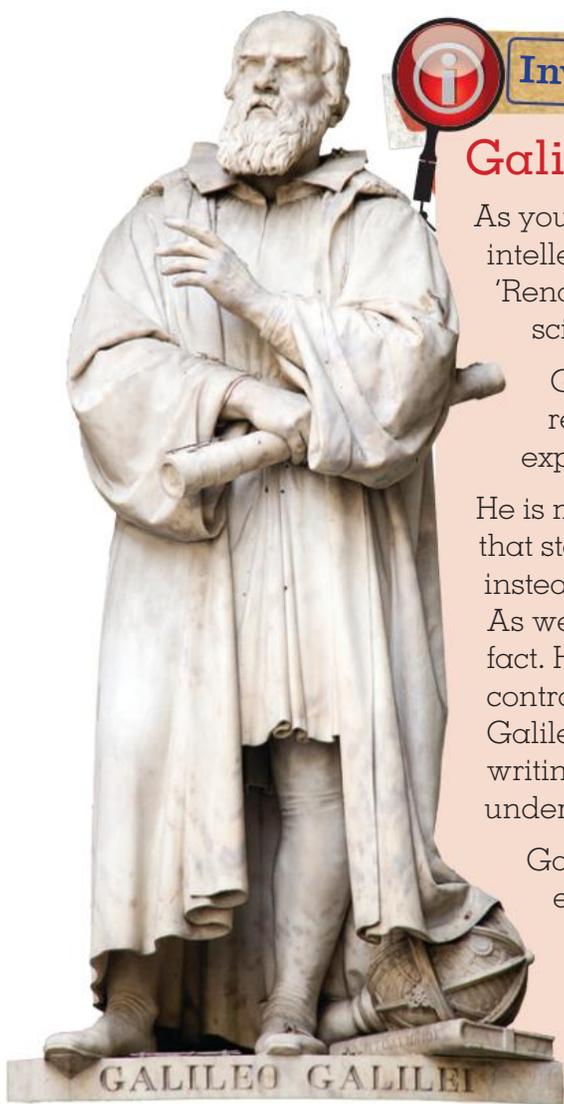
Galileo Galilei (1564–1642)

As you have learnt, the Renaissance was a glorious era of intellectual discovery. Galileo Galilei was an important 'Renaissance man' who made enormous progress with scientific discoveries that were innovative for his time.

Galileo led a scientific revolution and he is frequently referred to as the father of modern mechanics and experimental physics.

He is most famous for his research into the Copernicus theory that stated the Sun does not revolve around the Earth, but instead the Earth and other planets revolve around the Sun. As we know today, this theory is considered to be a proven fact. However, in Galileo's day, this idea was considered very controversial as it contradicted the religious beliefs of the time. Galileo was ordered not to teach this idea, but as a result of his writing about the Copernicus theory, he was eventually placed under permanent house arrest and was banished from **Firenze**.

Galileo constructed the first telescope that was strong enough to view the surface of the Moon. He discovered the Moon is rough, not smooth, as was previously thought. As he created more powerful telescopes, he made other important astronomical observations, including the finding that Jupiter is surrounded by four large moons.



Cosa pensi ?

Galileo's ideas and discoveries were highly contentious for the period of time he was living in, yet now they are celebrated as innovative and revolutionary. Why do you think people of the Renaissance era were so against his research? Would you say that contemporary society encourages or discourages this type of independent thinking? Try to think of examples to support your opinions.

Attività 8.1



Galileo Galilei made many important discoveries in the fields of physics and mathematics. With a partner, research Galileo Galilei on the Internet and compile a list summarising his many achievements.



Tocca a te!

Working with a partner, research another 'Renaissance man' not featured in this chapter, such as Michelangelo, Botticelli or someone of your choice, and create a Microsoft® PowerPoint® presentation to present to the class about their life and contribution to the Renaissance period.

Ripasso

- 1 Listen to the audio of **il passato prossimo** phrases and choose the correct subject pronoun according to who is performing the action. One has been done for you as an example.



Esempio ho mangiato **a** tu **b** noi **c** io

- | | | | |
|---|--------|-------|--------|
| 1 | a io | b lui | c tu |
| 2 | a tu | b noi | c voi |
| 3 | a lui | b lei | c tu |
| 4 | a voi | b noi | c loro |
| 5 | a loro | b voi | c noi |

- 2 Listen to the audio of the sentences spoken in Italian. Identify the order of the sentences below as you hear them by writing the corresponding number in each box.



- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | I ragazzi hanno scritto delle email. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Sono nata a Pisa. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Carlo ha voluto mangiare la bistecca. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Caterina ha detto che Firenze è bellissima. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Jason e Felicity hanno fatto un bel giro. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Alessandro ha preso un caffè al bar. |

- 3 In your exercise book, convert these English past participles into Italian. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio spoke → parlato

- | | | | |
|--------|--------------|-------------|----------|
| a sold | c understood | e preferred | g wanted |
| b met | d sang | f finished | h danced |

- 4 Complete the sentences by translating the past participles, as written in brackets, into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio Akrim (ate) ha mangiato una bistecca.

- a Io (understood) _____ la domanda.
 b Stephen e Nathan (spoke) _____ con Alessandro.
 c Melanie (danced) _____ alla festa.
 d Jessica (bought) _____ una giacca nuova.
 e Akrim e Melanie (met) _____ sul ponte.

- 5 Write five sentences in your exercise book, joining words from each column, to create sentences in the past tense that agree in gender and number. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio Jessica è caduta per terra.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| a Jessica | ti sei alzata | alle sei e mezza. |
| b Io e Nathan | mi sono svegliato | per terra. |
| c Tu | è caduta | a Firenze. |
| d Tu e Jessica | si sono divertiti | in spiaggia. |
| e Akrim e Melanie | siete andati | con le bici. |
| f Io | siamo usciti | presto. |

Riassunto

Now you can:

express **il passato prossimo** with reflexive verbs

	divertirsi	to enjoy oneself
singular	(io) mi sono divertito/a	I enjoyed myself
	(tu) ti sei divertito/a	you enjoyed yourself
	(lui/lei) si è divertito/a	he/she enjoyed himself/herself
plural	(noi) ci siamo divertiti/e	we enjoyed ourselves
	(voi) vi siete divertiti/e	you enjoyed yourselves
	(loro) si sono divertiti/e	they enjoyed themselves

use **avere** to form **il passato prossimo**

	-ARE verbs		-ERE verbs		-IRE verbs	
	mangiare	to eat	vendere	to sell	dormire	to sleep
singular	(io) ho mangiato	I ate	(io) ho venduto	I sold	(io) ho dormito	I slept
	(tu) hai mangiato	you ate	(tu) hai venduto	you sold	(tu) hai dormito	you slept
	(lui/lei) ha mangiato	he/she/it ate	(lui/lei) ha venduto	he/she/it sold	(lui/lei) ha dormito	he/she/it slept
plural	(noi) abbiamo mangiato	we ate	(noi) abbiamo venduto	we sold	(noi) abbiamo dormito	we slept
	(voi) avete mangiato	you ate	(voi) avete venduto	you sold	(voi) avete dormito	you slept
	(loro) hanno mangiato	they ate	(loro) hanno venduto	they sold	(loro) hanno dormito	they slept

use **irregular past participles**

Infinitive		Past tense	
aprire	to open	(io) ho aperto	I opened
chiedere	to ask	(io) ho chiesto	I asked
chiudere	to close	(io) ho chiuso	I closed
decidere	to decide	(io) ho deciso	I decided
dire	to say	(io) ho detto	I said
fare	to do	(io) ho fatto	I did
leggere	to read	(io) ho letto	I read
mettere	to put	(io) ho messo	I put
perdere	to lose	(io) ho perso	I lost
prendere	to take	(io) ho preso	I took
rispondere	to respond	(io) ho risposto	I responded
scrivere	to write	(io) ho scritto	I wrote
vedere	to see	(io) ho visto	I saw
essere	to be	(io) sono stato/a	I was/I stayed
nascere	to be born	(io) sono nato/a	I was born
rimanere	to remain	(io) sono rimasto/a	I remained
scendere	to go down	(io) sono sceso/a	I went down

Cosa facevano gli antichi romani?

You will learn how to:

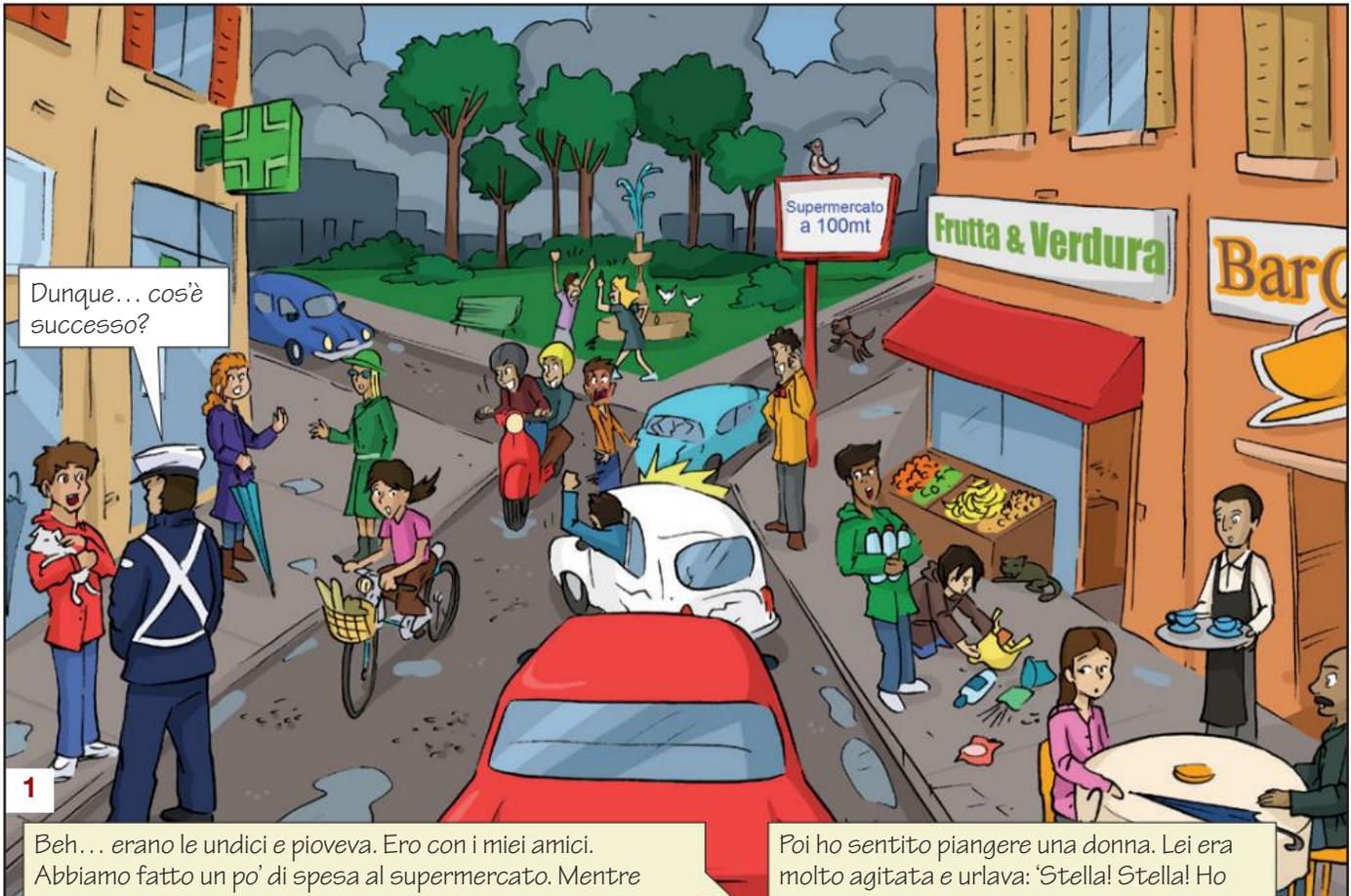
- form and use the imperfect tense (**l'imperfetto**) to describe the past
- talk about the past using **il passato prossimo** and **l'imperfetto**
- recognise key events in Italy's ancient history
- plan for an Italian-style party
- identify Italian food stores
- form diminutives with nouns to indicate size.



Cos'è successo?



The Australian students are in **Roma**, for their final week in Italy. Before they return to Australia, they have decided to host a small farewell party. While the group is out doing some shopping for the party, they become involved in a bit of drama.



1

Beh... erano le undici e pioveva. Ero con i miei amici. Abbiamo fatto un po' di spesa al supermercato. Mentre camminavamo lungo il corso ho sentito un cane. Il cane era in mezzo alla strada e abbaiva. C'era tantissimo traffico e non riusciva ad attraversare.

Poi ho sentito piangere una donna. Lei era molto agitata e urlava: 'Stella! Stella! Ho perso la mia bellissima Stella! Aiuto!' Ho capito subito che il cane era Stella. I miei amici mi hanno chiesto di salvare il cane.



2



3

Non sapevo cosa fare. Il traffico sembrava non finire mai, ma ho deciso di provare ad attraversare. Il cane continuava ad abbaiare... la donna piangeva... gli amici urlavano direzioni. C'era molta confusione!

Fortunatamente Stella era ferma e sono riuscito a prenderla e ad attraversare la strada.



Sì, sei stato molto fortunato, ma purtroppo le altre persone guardavano quello che facevi tu invece della strada e loro non sono stati così fortunati!

ABC Glossario

nomi

il corso	the main street
le direzioni	the directions
la donna	the woman
le persone	the people
la spesa	the shopping
il traffico	the traffic

aggettivi

agitato/a	agitated
fermo/a	still
fortunato/a	fortunate

avverbi

fortunatamente	fortunately
purtroppo	unfortunately

verbi

abbaiare	to bark
abbaiava	he/she/it was barking (from abbaiare —to bark)
attraversare	to cross (the road)
camminavamo	we were walking (from camminare —to walk)
continuava	he/she/it continued (from continuare —to continue)
era	he/she/it was (from essere —to be)



erano	it was/they were (from essere —to be)
ero	I was (from essere —to be)
facevi	you were doing (from fare —to do)
guardavano	they were watching (from guardare —to watch)
piangere	to cry
piangeva	he/she/it was crying (from piangere —to cry)
pioveva	it was raining (from piovere —to rain)
provare	to try
riusciva	he/she/it managed to (from riuscire —to manage to)
salvare	to save
sapevo	I knew (from sapere —to know [a fact])
sembrava	he/she/it seemed (from sembrare —to seem)
urlava	he/she/it was shouting (from urlare —to shout)
urlavano	they were shouting (from urlare —to shout)

altre espressioni e parole

c'era	there was
c'era molta confusione!	it was chaos!
cos'è successo?	what happened?
dunque	so, well (then)
in mezzo alla strada	in the middle of the road
lungo	along
mentre	while
prenderla	catch her (from prendere —to catch and la —direct object pronoun of 'her')

Attività 9.1

Look at the first frame of the cartoon story again. See if you can identify these people and objects and, with a partner, describe where they are located in English.

- 1 Stephen che parla con il vigile (policeman).
- 2 Due ragazzi su un motorino rosso.
- 3 Jessica che parla con una donna con un cappello verde.
- 4 Un gatto che dorme davanti al negozio di frutta e verdura.
- 5 Un uomo che parla al telefonino.
- 6 Un ombrello blu.
- 7 Due uccelli che fanno il bagno.
- 8 Un cameriere con due caffè.
- 9 Due donne che litigano (arguing).
- 10 Melanie che prende la spesa da terra.



L'imperfetto

Did you notice that Stephen used **il passato prossimo** in his explanation of events in the cartoon story? He has also used another tense to express what happened. Look at the cartoon story again. Can you see any differences between **il passato prossimo** and this other tense?

The other tense is called **l'imperfetto** (the imperfect). You might have noticed that **l'imperfetto** has been used when Stephen talks about the weather, gives the time and explains what he and the others involved were doing while something else happened. This tense is used for *descriptive purposes*; in fact it is sometimes called the 'past descriptive'!

If you are talking about the past and are describing someone or something, talking about feelings, the weather and the time, then you have to use **l'imperfetto**. You will also use this tense when talking about what 'used to' happen.

Forming **l'imperfetto** is quite straightforward. Look at the conjugation patterns in the table.



Handy hint

The **-ire** verbs, know as **-isc** verbs, (e.g. **preferire, capire, finire, pulire**) do not carry the **-isc** in **l'imperfetto**. They follow the pattern of regular **-ire** verbs.

	-ARE verbs		-ERE verbs		-IRE verbs	
	parlare	to speak	piangere	to cry	preferire	to prefer
singular	(io) parl <u>avo</u>	I was speaking	(io) piang <u>evo</u>	I was crying	(io) prefer <u>ivo</u>	I preferred
	(tu) parl <u>avi</u>	you were speaking	(tu) piang <u>evi</u>	you were crying	(tu) prefer <u>ivi</u>	you preferred
	(lui/lei) parl <u>ava</u>	he/she/it was speaking	(lui/lei) piang <u>eva</u>	he/she/it was crying	(lui/lei) prefer <u>iva</u>	he/she/it preferred
plural	(noi) parl <u>vamo</u>	we were speaking	(noi) piang <u>vamo</u>	we were crying	(noi) prefer <u>vamo</u>	we preferred
	(voi) parl <u>vate</u>	you were speaking	(voi) piang <u>vate</u>	you were crying	(voi) prefer <u>vate</u>	you preferred
	(loro) parl <u>vano</u>	they were speaking	(loro) piang <u>vano</u>	they were crying	(loro) prefer <u>vano</u>	they preferred

You can see that each verb uses the endings **-vo, -vi, -va, -vamo, -vate, -vano** and that the same vowel as the verb in its infinitive (**-a, -e, -i**) is used in front of these endings.



Even though most verbs in **l'imperfetto** are regular, the **imperfetto** forms of some verbs, such as **essere**, **fare** and **dire**, are irregular. The irregular forms of commonly used verbs should be memorised.

	essere	to be	fare	to do	dire	to say/to tell
singular	(io) ero	I was	(io) facevo	I did	(io) dicevo	I said
	(tu) eri	you were	(tu) facevi	you did	(tu) dicevi	you said
	(lui/lei) era	he/she/it was	(lui/lei) faceva	he/she/it did	(lui/lei) diceva	he/she/it said
plural	(noi) eravamo	we were	(noi) facevamo	we did	(noi) dicevamo	we said
	(voi) eravate	you were	(voi) facevate	you did	(voi) dicevate	you said
	(loro) erano	they were	(loro) facevano	they did	(loro) dicevano	they said

Handy hint

Essere is irregular but **avere** (to have) is regular in **l'imperfetto**.

Attività 4.2



Listen to these sentences describing past actions and events. Identify the form of the imperfect verb that is used and write your answers in your exercise book.

Esempio Luigi veniva a scuola in macchina. **veniva** → **lui/lei** form

Attività 4.3

Here are some examples of how the imperfect tense is used in English. Complete the Italian translations by writing the correct form of the verb(s) in **l'imperfetto**. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio We used to have two dogs.

Avevamo due cani.

1 I was talking on the mobile.

_____ **al telefonino.**

2 My friends were playing the guitar.

I miei amici _____ **la chitarra.**

3 You (plural) used to do judo when you (plural) were younger.

_____ **judo quando** _____ **più giovane.**

4 It was a very cold day and it was raining.

_____ **una giornata molto fredda e** _____.

5 Every Saturday we would (used to) play tennis.

Ogni sabato _____ **a tennis.**



L'imperfetto versus il passato prossimo

When talking about the past you will usually need to use both **l'imperfetto** and **il passato prossimo**. These rules will help you decide when to use which tense.

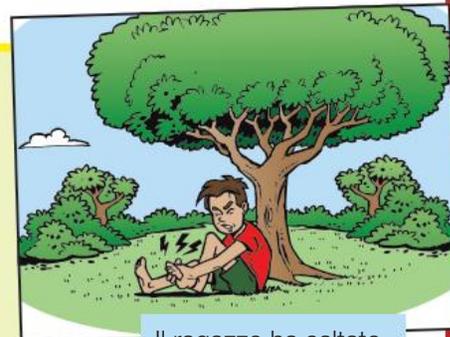
L'imperfetto is used when:

- talking about repeated/habitual actions in the past (what you used to do)
- referring to descriptions in the past
- describing physical and emotional feelings in the past
- talking about past actions that were taking place when something else happened.

L'imperfetto is often used to translate the English: 'person' + was/were + verb+ing. In English, this is called the 'continuous past'.

Giorgio mangiava la pizza. Giorgio was eating the pizza.

I ragazzi saltavano sulla pedana elastica.
The children were jumping on the trampoline.



Il ragazzo ha saltato.



I ragazzi saltavano.

Attività 4.4

Identify which parts of these sentences would be translated with **l'imperfetto** and which would take **il passato prossimo** in Italian. Careful, some sentences only require one past tense form. Once you have done this, translate the sentences into Italian in your exercise book, using the past tense structures you have identified.

l'imperfetto

il passato prossimo

Esempio I was watching television when my mother arrived home.

Guardavo la televisione quando è arrivata a casa mia madre.

- 1 I ate too much last night.
- 2 We used to live in Darwin.
- 3 Skye went to Rome last spring.
- 4 My best friend used to have red hair.
- 5 Yesterday it was snowing in Milan.
- 6 When Giovanni returned from Sydney he was very tired.
- 7 They were eating breakfast when Marisa rang.
- 8 While you were doing your homework, I was playing video games.

Handy hint

The word **mentre** (while) usually indicates that the imperfect tense should be used.

Un'intervista con Valeria Vettrinelli

Read the interview transcript of Italian television personality Valeria Vettrinelli talking to a journalist about the traffic incident in **Corso Cavour** involving Stephen and the Australian students.

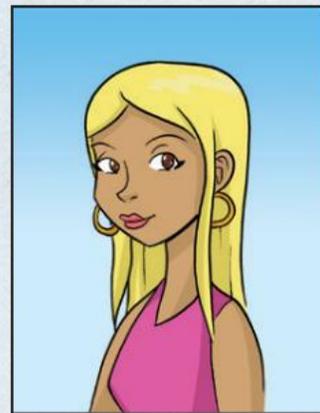


Giornalista: L'eroe di Corso Cavour è un giovane australiano! Ieri faceva brutto tempo a Roma e Stella, la protagonista canina del popolare teledramma *Un Veterinario in Famiglia*, ha avuto una piccola avventura. Con noi oggi c'è l'attrice romana Valeria Vettrinelli, padrona di Stella e anche la sua co-star nel teledramma. Valeria, cos'è successo?

Valeria: Eravamo in Corso Cavour. Non mi sentivo molto bene e così sono andata in farmacia. Di solito Stella è molto tranquilla e dolce quando usciamo, ma ieri c'era un temporale e lei era un po' agitata. Eravamo davanti alla farmacia, quando abbiamo sentito un grande rumore. Povera Stella, si è spaventata ed è scappata via. Era così veloce che non ho potuto prenderla.

Giornalista: Valeria, aveva molta paura?

Valeria: Sì, c'era molto traffico e Stella non è abituata al traffico. Sono rimasta tranquilla e ho chiesto aiuto a un gruppo di giovani. Quel giovane australiano è stato molto coraggioso. È andato subito in strada e ha salvato il mio tesoro.



Ero preoccupata, ma tutto è finito molto bene.

Giornalista: E Stella?

Valeria: Oggi sta bene. Ieri siamo andati subito da mio cugino; lui è veterinario.

Giornalista: Sei fortunata ad avere un veterinario in famiglia!

Valeria: Sì, siamo molto fortunati!

nomi

l'avventura	the adventure
l'eroe	the hero
il/la giornalista	the journalist
la padrona	the owner
il/la protagonista	the protagonist, the lead role
il rumore	the noise
il teledramma	the television drama
il temporale	the thunderstorm
il veterinario	the veterinarian

aggettivi

canino/a	canine
coraggioso/a	brave
dolce	sweet
povero/a	poor

verbi

non è abituata	she is not accustomed to (from abituare —to accustom [to something])
si è spaventata	she got frightened (from spaventarsi —to get frightened)

altre espressioni e parole

di solito	usually
è scappata via	she ran away
non mi sentivo molto bene	I wasn't feeling very well
tesoro	(little) darling (literally: 'treasure', but often used as a term of endearment)

Attività 4.5

Look at the interview again. How many uses of **l'imperfetto** can you find in the interview? How many uses of **il passato prossimo** are there?

Attività 4.6

Answer the following questions, in English, in your exercise book, based on the information in the interview with Valeria Vettrinelli.

- 1 What does the journalist say about Stephen in his opening comment?
- 2 Who is Valeria Vettrinelli and what is her relationship to Stella?
- 3 What does Valeria say about Stella's temperament?
- 4 According to Valeria, what might have influenced Stella's behaviour?
- 5 Why was Valeria frightened?
- 6 Why does Valeria mention her cousin?

Attività 4.7

As a class, discuss how Valeria's recollection of events differs from Stephen's account in the cartoon story at the start of the chapter.



Handy hint

In her interview, Valeria mentioned going to **la farmacia** (the pharmacy). Pharmacies in Italy usually only sell medicines. To buy make-up, perfumes and the giftware that we sometimes see in Australian pharmacies, Italians would be more likely to visit **la profumeria**.



Italy's ancient past

History and the past is very much a part of everyday life for Italians. In most cities, modern architecture exists side by side with structures that are hundreds, and even thousands of years old.

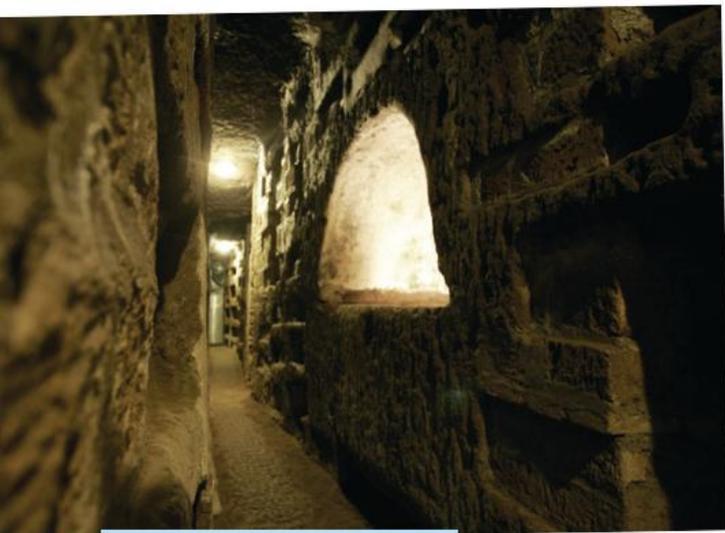
Nowhere is this more evident than in **Roma**, where many buildings from ancient times are still a feature of the city, even though they may be in ruins. Visitors to **Roma** can sit in the stands of **il Colosseo**, walk inside temples at **il Foro** (the Forum) and even see examples of Roman sewers and the catacombs (underground burial rooms and tunnels).

Tourist walking around the streets of **Roma** may also notice another reference to the city's ancient history—the letters SPQR. These are an acronym for the Latin phrase *Senatus Populusque Romanus* (Senate and People of Rome). The saying originally referred to the government of the ancient Roman Republic and was used as an official signature of the government. It is still the motto of **Roma** and can be seen on many buildings, fountains and even on rubbish bins and manhole covers in the city. SPQR is also part of **Roma's** coat of arms.

As one of the founding cities of Western civilisation, **Roma**, as a city, has a long and illustrious history, spanning more than 2500 years. **Roma** was the centre of the Roman Empire, which dominated for 400 years from the first century BCE till the fourth century CE, and at its peak spanned 6.5 million square kilometres across Europe, North Africa and the Middle East.



Rome's ancient motto on a manhole cover



Catacombs of ancient Rome

Attività 4.8



Find out more about ancient Rome by researching the following topics:

- the legend of Romulus and Remus
- the assassination of Julius Caesar
- the rule of Emperor Augustus
- Roman catacombs.

Work in groups of four with each member choosing one topic to research and report back to the group. The timeline on page 157 is a good starting point for your research.

A timeline of ancient Rome



Cosa pensi ?

Consider the legacy of the Roman Empire. Do you know of any other empire that was as powerful at the height of its rule?

- 753 BCE** Building of the city of Rome begins. According to legend, Rome was founded by twin brothers Romulus and Remus. The city grew from existing villages and, according to archaeological evidence, the village of Rome probably dates back to the eighth century BCE.
- 509 BCE** Rome becomes a republic. The last of the seven kings of Rome is overthrown and a system of government based on annually elected magistrates and senators is introduced.
- 202 BCE** The power of Rome continues to grow and spread beyond Italy. The Romans become the dominant civilisation of the Mediterranean Sea.
- 146 BCE** By this time the Romans had conquered Greece and most of Spain.
- 44 BCE** Julius Caesar, one of Rome's most famous political leaders, is assassinated by senators who opposed Caesar's aim of absolute power and who wanted to restore constitutional government.
- 27 BCE** The Roman Empire is established, with Augustus as its first emperor, after the republican government collapsed. Emperors held the highest authority in the Empire, which meant that power was in the hands of one individual. This went against the Senate and People of Rome philosophy that was central to the Roman Republic.
- 96–180 CE** The Empire reaches its peak in relation to the territory that it controlled, its economic stability and cultural influence.
- 235–285 CE** This time was considered the worst period in Roman history. There was great political turmoil and fourteen Roman emperors were murdered in quick succession.
- 395 CE** The Roman Empire becomes divided into eastern and western halves ruled by two co-emperors.
- 455 CE** The Vandal warriors (a Germanic tribe) invade Italy from Africa and destroy Rome.
- 476 CE** The Roman Empire collapses completely and the last emperor, Romulus Augustulus, is overthrown. A German warrior, known as Odoacer, assumes power as the first barbarian king of Italy.



An image of the famous statue of Romulus and Remus who, according to legend, were nursed by a she-wolf.



Julius Caesar



Roman inventions

Ancient Romans were not only an impressive society because of the power and size of their empire when it was thriving; they were also admired for what they invented and popularised.

Did you know?

- Concrete was invented by the Romans.
- Public baths and saunas were popular places of gathering for the Romans.
- Romans discovered the benefits of central heating, which was used to heat the floors and walls of bath houses.
- The Romans were responsible for constructing the best drains in the world. Underground drains were used to remove dirty water and sewage. To help keep the drains clean, they were flushed out with water from the baths.
- Calendars, similar to those we use today, originated in ancient Rome in 45 BCE. Julius Caesar organised the calendar so that each month was named after an important person or a god. For example, the month of March comes from the Latin word *Martius*, a time when Romans celebrated Mars (the god of war). Where do you think the name for July comes from?

Cosa pensi ?

What do you think about ancient Rome's achievements? How important do you think their inventions were at the time and what have they influenced today?



Ruins of ancient Roman baths

Attività 9.9



What other objects and systems still used in modern society can we trace back to the Romans? Do some research on the Internet and at your library to find out more about ancient Roman inventions. Write a summary in your exercise book based on your findings. Here are some possible topics to get your started:

- amphitheatres
- aqueducts
- Roman numerals.

Cosa hai comprato?

What did you buy?

Nina and the Australian students are getting together for **una spaghattata** (a late night spaghetti feast). While Nathan is out buying ingredients for the meal, Nina calls to check up on him. Read the transcript of their telephone conversation below.



Pronto!



Nathan! Sono Nina. Senti, hai fatto la spesa?



Sì, sono andato al supermercato in Corso Cavour.



Che cosa hai comprato? Hai preso la pasta?



Sì, ho preso tre pacchetti e anche tre barattoli di sugo.



E da bere? Hai comprato qualcosa?



Sì, ho comprato quattro bottiglie d'acqua, due bottiglie di tè freddo e anche sei bottiglie di succo di frutta.



Sei bottiglie!



Sì, a Stephen piace il succo di frutta.



Va bene... Vado in pasticceria e prendo una torta.



Non c'è bisogno, ho comprato del gelato.



La prendo lo stesso!

ABC

Glossario

nomi

i barattoli the jars
le bottiglie the bottles
i pacchetti the packets

il sugo the sauce (pasta sauce)
il succo di frutta the fruit juice
la torta the cake

altre espressioni e parole

la prendo lo stesso!
non c'è bisogno

I'll get it (**la torta**) anyway!
there's no need



Attività 9.10

Use the shopping catalogue page above to calculate how much Nathan spent on the food and drink for **la spaghetтата**. Here is a list of the items (and quantities) that he purchased. Write your calculations in your exercise book.

- sei bottiglie di succo di frutta
- tre pacchetti di pasta
- quattro bottiglie d'acqua minerale
- due bottiglie di tè freddo
- tre barattoli di sugo
- quattro pacchetti di gelato



Tocca a te!

With a partner, take turns to ask for and give the price of items in the catalogue page above in Italian. Vary your questions by asking how much a specific quantity of an item costs. The person who is responding will have to calculate the price based on the number of items requested.

Esempio A: Quanto costano due bottiglie di tè freddo?

B: Costano €2,00.



Facciamo la spesa!

The Australian students had been shopping at **il supermercato** for their farewell party when they became involved in **l'avventura di Stella**.

Food shopping in Italy is a special experience. In most cities and towns, there are many specialty **negozi d'alimentari** (food stores) that sell fresh produce and offer customers their knowledge and expertise. **I supermercati** are becoming more common in Italy and are sometimes favoured for food shopping because of their competitive prices, variety of produce and convenience.

Despite the growth of supermarket shopping, some Italians still prefer to buy their food every day or every other day at the local specialist store or at **il mercato** (the market), which is usually held at least once a week in most centres. The markets sell a large variety of fresh food along with general household goods.

The reasons why many Italians shop so frequently could be because there is not sufficient storage space in the small apartments they live in, or more probably because they want to ensure that what they buy is at its freshest.

Cosa pensi ?

How is food shopping in Australia similar or different to food shopping in Italy? What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages of shopping at a supermarket or at markets and/or specialty food stores?



la salumeria

I negozi d'alimentari



The food stores

Big cities and most residential areas in Italy will have the basic food necessities within walking distance at these food stores.

- il fruttivendolo the greengrocer (fruit and vegetables)
- la macelleria the butcher
- il negozio di (generi) the general store
- alimentari
- il panificio the bakery
- la pescheria the fishmonger
- la rosticceria the take-away shop
(literally: 'roasted meats store')
- la salumeria the delicatessen (cold meats, cheeses etc.)



Ortofrutta (fruit and vegetables) al mercato



Diminutives

Sometimes in English if we want to give the idea that something is cute or small we may add *-let* and *-ie/y* to the end of the noun (e.g. dog—doggie; pig—piglet, piggy; bird—birdie). The technical word for this is forming a 'diminutive'.

Using diminutive forms is common in Italian. As in English, they are usually formed by adding a suffix to the end of the noun. The final vowel of the noun is dropped before adding the diminutive suffix. In the feminine form the *-o* changes to *-a*.

Suffix	Noun	Diminutive form	Meaning
-ino	il telefono	il telefonino	the little phone/mobile
-ina	la ragazza	la ragazzina	the little girl/young girl
-etto	il pacco	il pacchetto	the little packet
-etta	la piazza	la piazzetta	the little town square

Sometimes more than one diminutive suffix can be added. Look at this example:



il sacco (the bag)



il sacchetto
(the little bag)



il sacchettino
(the very little bag)

Attività 9.11

Add the correct suffix (from the options in brackets) to the nouns below to create diminutive forms in Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book. One has been done for you as an example.

Esempio il ragazzo (-ino/-ina) → **il ragazzino**

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 la sorella (-ino/-ina) | 6 l'appartamento (-ino/-ina) |
| 2 la pizza (-etto/-etta) | 7 il biscotto (-ino/-ina) |
| 3 il cioccolato (-ino/-ina) | 8 la mano (-ino/-ina) |
| 4 la borsa (-etto/-etta) | 9 la maglia (-etto/-etta) |
| 5 il gatto (-ino/-ina) | 10 il coniglio (-etto/-etta) |

Riassunto

Now you can:

form and use the imperfect tense (l'imperfetto) and talk about the past using il passato prossimo and l'imperfetto

	-ARE verbs		-ERE verbs		-IRE verbs	
	parlare	to speak	piangere	to cry	preferire	to prefer
singular	(io) parlavo (tu) parlavi (lui/lei) parlava	I was speaking you were speaking he/she/it was speaking	(io) piangevo (tu) piangevi (lui/lei) piangeva	I was crying you were crying he/she/it was crying	(io) preferivo (tu) preferivi (lui/lei) preferiva	I preferred you preferred he/she/it preferred
plural	(noi) parlavamo (voi) parlavate (loro) parlavano	we were speaking you were speaking they were speaking	(noi) piangevamo (voi) piangevate (loro) piangevano	we were crying you were crying they were crying	(noi) preferivamo (voi) preferivate (loro) preferivano	we preferred you preferred they preferred

	essere	to be	fare	to do	dire	to say/to tell
singular	(io) ero (tu) eri (lui/lei) era	I was you were he/she/it was	(io) facevo (tu) facevi (lui/lei) faceva	I did you did he/she/it did	(io) dicevo (tu) dicevi (lui/lei) diceva	I said you said he/she/it said
plural	(noi) eravamo (voi) eravate (loro) erano	we were you were they were	(noi) facevamo (voi) facevate (loro) facevano	we did you did they did	(noi) dicevamo (voi) dicevate (loro) dicevano	we said you said they said

identify Italian food stores

il fruttivendolo	the greengrocer (fruit and vegetables)
la macelleria	the butcher
il negozio di (generi) alimentari	the general store
il panificio	the bakery
la pescheria	the fishmonger
la rosticceria	the take-away shop (literally: 'roasted meats store')
la salumeria	the delicatessen (cold meats, cheeses etc.)

form diminutives with nouns to indicate size

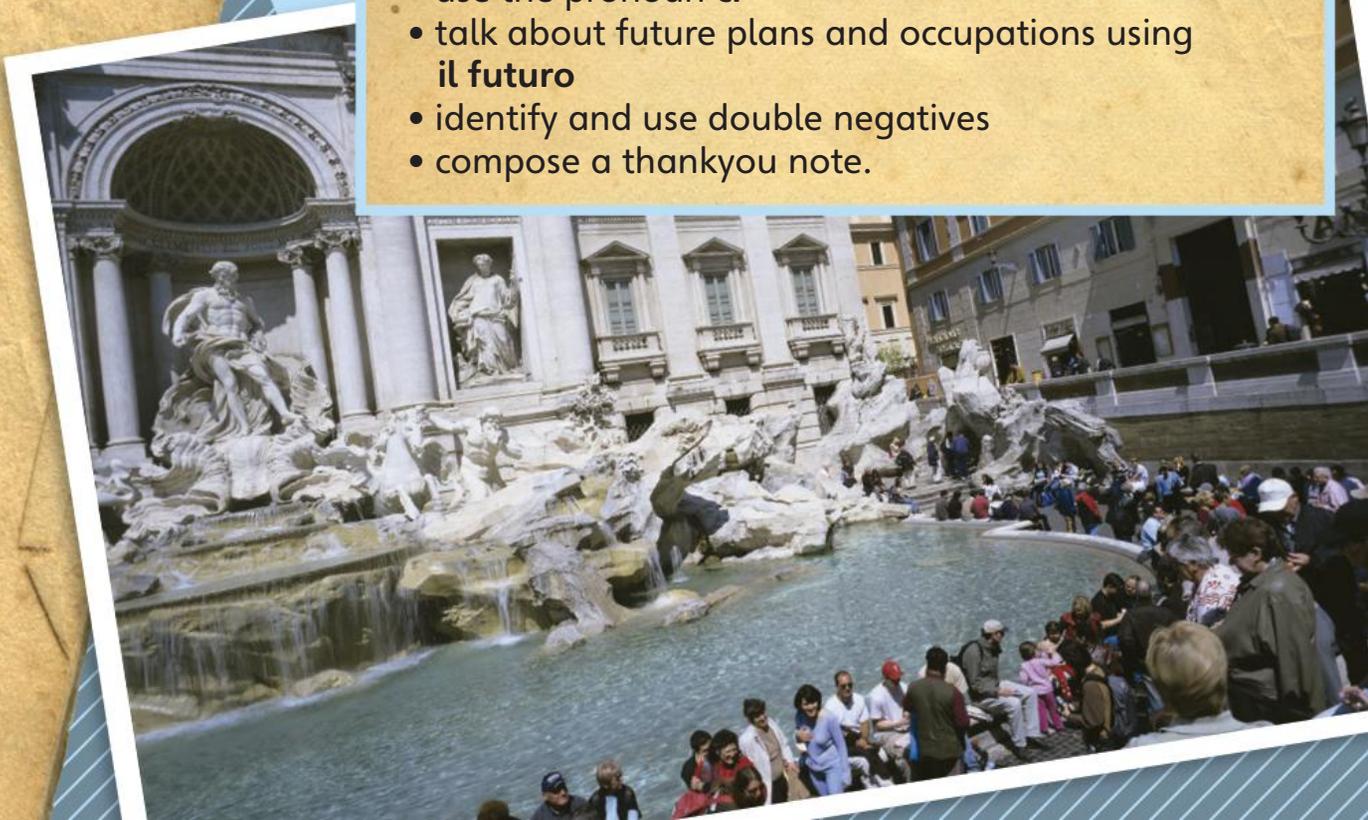
Suffix	Noun	Diminutive form	Meaning
-ino	il telefono	il telefonino	the little phone/mobile
-ina	la ragazza	la ragazzina	the little girl/young girl
-etto	il pacco	il pacchetto	the little packet
-etta	la piazza	la piazzetta	the little town square

10

Arrivederci Roma...

You will learn how to:

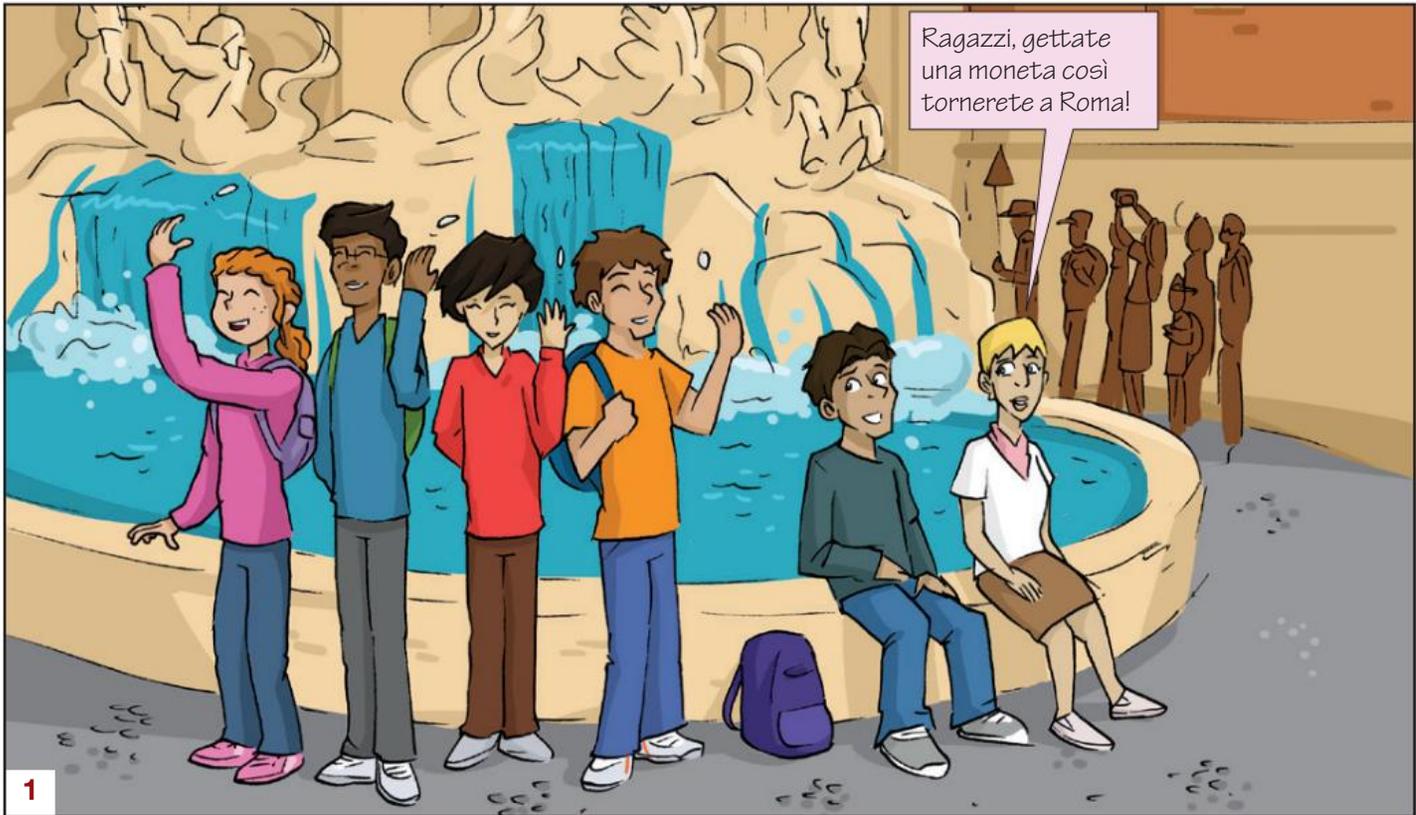
- form and use the future tense (**il futuro**)
- talk about Italian cinema
- use the pronoun **ci**
- talk about future plans and occupations using **il futuro**
- identify and use double negatives
- compose a thankyou note.



Quel che sarà, sarà!



On their last day in **Roma**, the Australian students visit **la Fontana di Trevi** (the Trevi Fountain) with Nina and Alessandro to throw a coin in the fountain and make a wish to return to **Roma** one day.



Ragazzi, gettate una moneta così tornerete a Roma!

1

Alessandro e Nina, questi regali sono per voi, da parte di tutti noi. Grazie di tutto quello che avete fatto per noi mentre eravamo in Italia. Spero che ci rivedremo un giorno, qui in Italia o in Australia.

Ooh, che bella maglietta! Grazie. Penserò a voi quando la porto.

Grazie! È proprio quello che volevo! Ritournerai in Italia, Melanie?

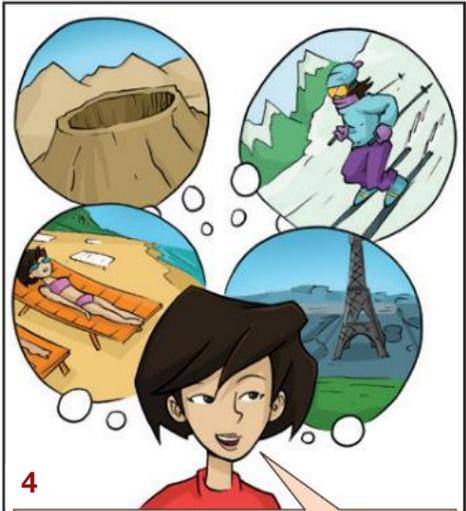
Grazie, Melanie... ma non c'era nessun bisogno di un regalo.

2

Sì, grazie. Ci rivedremo sicuramente.

Sicuramente! Finirò la scuola e poi viaggerò. Prima di tutto verrò in Italia. Ci sono molti posti che ancora non ho visto.

3



4

Quando tornerò in Italia visiterò le rovine di Pompei e scalerò il Vesuvio. Poi passerò una settimana a sciare sulle Dolomiti... esplorerò la Sardegna... e mi piacerebbe anche vedere altri paesi d'Europa.



Melanie, sei una vera esploratrice! Cosa farai da grande? L'archeologa?

Buon'idea! O farò la violinista... o forse l'allenatrice di nuoto.

5



E tu Alessandro, verrai in Australia?

Non ci sono mai stato, ma un giorno verrò!

Forse verrai con Nina!

Sfacciata!

6



Più tardi...

Mi mancherà il gelato italiano.

E la pizza.

Ci mancheranno tutti i nostri amici!

Sì, ci mancherete tanto!

7



Non volete tornare in Australia?

Sì, ma ci mancherà l'Italia!

8

Veramente sarà bello tornare in Australia e rivedere la famiglia. La prima cosa che farò... mangerò del toast con la Vegemite!



Io invece andrò subito in spiaggia.

Con la tua ragazza? Oohh...

9

Nathan, tu non mi mancherai per niente!

ABC Glossario

nomi

- l'archeologa** (f) the archaeologist
- l'esploratrice** (f) the explorer
- la moneta** the coin
- i paesi** the countries
- i posti** the places
- le rovine** the ruins
- il/la violinista** the violinist

aggettivo

- sfacciato/a** cheeky

Handy hint

The prefix **ri-** can be added to some verbs to convey the idea of doing something again—e.g. **rifare** (to do again), **ritornare** (to come back), **ridare** (to give again), **ricominciare** (to restart). **Ri-** verbs are conjugated like the original verb they relate to—e.g. **rifare** in the present tense is simply **ri-** plus the present tense of **fare** (**rifaccio, rifai, rifa, rifacciamo, rifate, rifanno**).

avverbi

sicuramente	certainly
veramente	really

verbi

andrò	I will go (from andare —to go)
esplorerò	I will explore (from esplorare —to explore)
farò	I will do/make/be (from fare —to do)
finirò	I will finish (from finire —to finish)
gettate	you (plural) throw (from gettare —to throw)
ci mancherà	we will miss him/her/it (from mancare —to be missing)
mi mancherà	I will miss him/her/it (from mancare —to be missing)
mi mancherai	I will miss you (from mancare —to be missing)
ci mancheranno	we will miss them (from mancare —to be missing)
ci mancherete	we will miss you (plural) (from mancare —to be missing)
mangerò	I will eat (from mangiare —to eat)
passerò	I will pass time/spend time (from passare —to pass/ to spend time)
penserò	I will think (from pensare —to think)
mi piacerebbe	I would like to (from piacere —to like)
ritornerai	you will return (from ritornare —to return)
rivedere	to see again
ci rivedremo	we will see each other again (from rivedersi —to see each other again)
sarà	he/she/it will be (from essere —to be)
scalerò	I will climb (from scalare —to climb)
spero	I hope (from sperare —to hope)
tornerete	you (plural) will return (from tornare —to return)
tornerò	I will return (from tornare —to return)
verrai	you will come (from venire —to come)
verrò	I will come (from venire —to come)
viaggerò	I will travel (from viaggiare —to travel)
visiterò	I will visit (from visitare —to visit)

altre espressioni e parole

cosa farai da grande?	what will you be when you grow up?
da parte di tutti noi	from all of us (literally: 'on the part of us all')
è proprio quello che volevo	it's just what I wanted
grazie di tutto	thank you for everything
non c'era nessun bisogno	there was no need
non ci sono mai stato (m)	I have never been there
per niente	for nothing

Attività 10.1

Look at the cartoon story again. Answer these questions, in English, in your exercise book.

- 1 What does Nina instruct the group to do in front of **la Fontana di Trevi**?
- 2 Why does Melanie give Alessandro and Nina gifts?
- 3 What does Melanie need to do before she travels again?
- 4 Where will Melanie visit when she goes back to Italy?
- 5 Why do you think Alessandro calls Melanie an explorer?
- 6 What is the first thing Jessica will do when she gets back to Australia?



Investigazione Linguistica

Il futuro

The cartoon story included several examples of **il futuro** (the future tense). As the name implies, the tense is used to talk about future events.

The future tense in Italian is used in much the same way as it is in English.

Esempi

Dove passerai le vacanze? Where will you spend the holidays?

Le passerò a Capri. I will spend them in Capri.

In English, the future is expressed with the word 'will' or the phrase 'going to' before the verb. In Italian, only the verb with the correct future ending is needed. The future tense in Italian is easy to form and to use. Look at the table on page 170.

Quando tornerò in Italia visiterò le rovine di Pompei e scalerò il Vesuvio.



Handy hint

Italians may also use the present tense instead of **il futuro** if the action will take place in the near future—in the next few hours or even days. '**Stasera vado al cinema.**' or '**Stasera andrò al cinema.**' are both acceptable ways to say 'Tonight I am/ will be going to the cinema.' You can see from the translation that we have a similar choice in English.

	-ARE verbs		-ERE verbs		-IRE verbs	
	cantare	to sing	scrivere	to write	dormire	to sleep
singular	(io) canterò	I will sing	(io) scriverò	I will write	(io) dormirò	I will sleep
	(tu) canterai	you will sing	(tu) scriverai	you will write	(tu) dormirai	you will sleep
	(lui/lei) canterà	he/she/it will sing	(lui/lei) scriverà	he/she/it will write	(lui/lei) dormirà	he/she/it will sleep
plural	(noi) canteremo	we will sing	(noi) scriveremo	we will write	(noi) dormiremo	we will sleep
	(voi) canterete	you will sing	(voi) scriverete	you will write	(voi) dormirete	you will sleep
	(loro) canteranno	they will sing	(loro) scriveranno	they will write	(loro) dormiranno	they will sleep

Handy hint

For **-isc** verbs like **finire** (e.g. **finisco**), the **-isc** is not included when forming **il futuro** (e.g. **finirò**).

What do you notice about the formation of **il futuro**? The endings for the six forms of the future tense in Italian are almost the same across all verbs.

For **-ere** and **-ire** verbs, the future ending is added to the end of the verb, once the final **-e** has been removed.

Esempio conoscere → conoscer- → conoscerò

For **-are** verbs, the characteristic **-a** changes to an **-e**.

Esempio parlare → parler- → parlerò

Attività 10.2

Using **il futuro**, complete these sentences in your exercise book with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

Esempio Loro arriveranno il sei dicembre. (*arrivare*)

1 Tu _____ la Francia la settimana prossima. (*visitare*)

2 Noi _____ insieme venerdì sera. (*uscire*)

3 Stella _____ in Italia l'anno prossimo. (*ritornare*)

4 Io _____ i compiti domenica. (*finire*)

5 Voi quando _____? (*partire*)

6 Le ragazze _____ al concerto stasera. (*cantare*)

Attività 10.3



Listen to the audio talking about things that will happen in the future. Copy each sentence in Italian into your exercise book and write the English translation beneath it.

Esempio **Domenica mattina dormirò fino alle dieci.**

On Sunday morning I will sleep until ten o'clock.



Investigazione Linguistica

More about il futuro

In the present tense, verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare** add a 'h' before the **tu** and **noi** endings in order to keep the hard 'c' or 'g' sound of the infinitive verb (e.g. **giocare**—**tu giochi, noi giochiamo**). This rule also applies to **il futuro**.

	giocare	to play	pagare	to pay
singular	(io) giocherò (tu) giocherai (lui/lei) giocherà	I will play you will play he/she/it will play	(io) pagherò (tu) pagherai (lui/lei) pagherà	I will pay you will pay he/she/it will pay
plural	(noi) giocheremo (voi) giocherete (loro) giocheranno	we will play you will play they will play	(noi) pagheremo (voi) pagherete (loro) pagheranno	we will pay you will pay they will pay

Notice that a 'h' is included in all six forms of the verbs **giocare** and **pagare**. Other **-care** and **-gare** verbs follow this same pattern (e.g. **mancare**—to be missing).

In **il futuro**, verbs ending in **-ciare** and **-giare** (e.g. **cominciare** and **mangiare**) drop the 'i' before the **-are** ending and change as shown below:

	cominciare	to begin	mangiare	to eat
singular	(io) comincerò (tu) comincerai (lui/lei) comincerà	I will begin you will begin he/she/it will begin	(io) mangerò (tu) mangerai (lui/lei) mangerà	I will eat you will eat he/she/it will eat
plural	(noi) cominceremo (voi) comincerete (loro) cominceranno	we will begin you will begin they will begin	(noi) mangeremo (voi) mangerete (loro) mangeranno	we will eat you will eat they will eat



Below are the future forms of several common irregular verbs.



Ho una fame da lupo! Mangerò un grande panino per pranzo.

	essere	avere
singular	(io) sarò (tu) sarai (lui/lei) sarà	(io) avrò (tu) avrai (lui/lei) avrà
plural	(noi) saremo (voi) sarete (loro) saranno	(noi) avremo (voi) avrete (loro) avranno

	andare	fare	venire
singular	(io) andrò (tu) andrai (lui/lei) andrà	(io) farò (tu) farai (lui/lei) farà	(io) verrò (tu) verrai (lui/lei) verrà
plural	(noi) andremo (voi) andrete (loro) andranno	(noi) faremo (voi) farete (loro) faranno	(noi) verremo (voi) verrete (loro) verranno

Il futuro: parole utili

The future: useful words

Here is a list of vocabulary that may come in handy when talking about the future.

domani	tomorrow
dopodomani	day after tomorrow
fra tre giorni/mesi/anni	in three days/months/years
la settimana prossima	the next week
il mese prossimo	the next month
durante le vacanze	during the holidays

Attività 10.4

In your exercise book, write five sentences in Italian that each contain a phrase from the list of useful words above and a verb in the future tense.

Esempio Fra quattro giorni arriverà la mia amica dall'Italia.

In four days my friend is arriving from Italy.



Durante le vacanze le stazioni in Italia saranno piene.

Attività 10.5

Using **il futuro**, complete these sentences in your exercise book with the correct form of the verb(s) given in brackets.

Esempio Quando le ragazze **arriveranno** noi **faremo** una festa.
(arrivare/fare)

- 1 Quanto tempo tu _____ in Liguria? (restare)
- 2 Loro _____ per la Sicilia la settimana prossima. (partire)
- 3 Voi _____ sul treno quando _____ a Venezia il mese prossimo. (dormire/andare)
- 4 Dopodomani noi _____ a tennis e poi _____ un film al cinema. (giocare/guardare)
- 5 Il tempo _____ bello dopodomani e loro _____ un picnic. (essere/fare)
- 6 La scuola _____ fra qualche mese e poi io _____ un mese di vacanze. (finire/avere)

Getterò una moneta
nella fontana così
tornerò a Roma.



Tocca a te!

Working in pairs, take turns to ask and tell your partner in Italian what you plan to do next weekend. Use **il futuro** in your questions and responses. Try to say at least three things that you plan to do—you could make them up if you want to!

Esempio **A:** Cosa farai sabato?
B: Non lo so. Forse andrò da Michele.

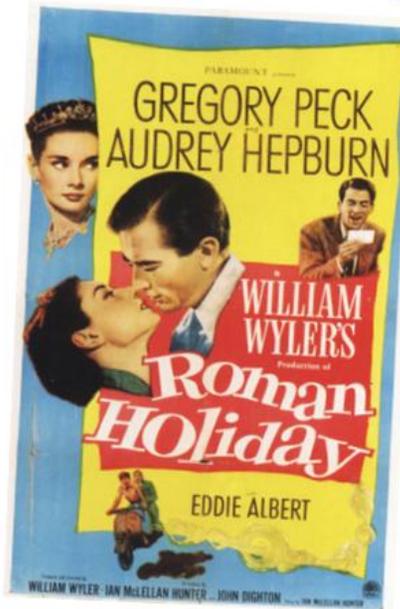
Investigazione Culturale

La Fontana di Trevi

La Fontana di Trevi is one of **Roma's** most visited landmarks. Construction of the fountain began in 1732, but the Roman aqueduct that feeds it was built way back in the first century BCE!

La Fontana di Trevi has also 'appeared' in cinema. It is one of the many Roman backdrops in the 1953 film **Vacanze Romane**—the first American film to feature Italy as a setting.

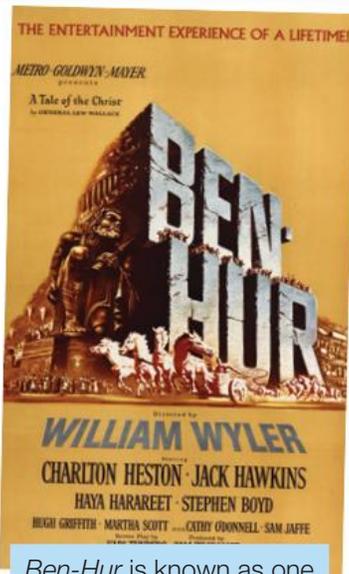
In the 1954 American film, *Three Coins in the Fountain*, there's reference to the legend that if visitors throw a coin into **la Fontana di Trevi**, they are sure to return to Rome. The coin should be thrown over your shoulder while facing away from the fountain. Approximately €3,000 (about A\$5500) is thrown into the fountain every day. There are often attempts to steal the coins so it is cleared most nights, with the money collected going towards projects for the needy around **Roma**.



Cosa pensi?

Are there any places where you live that people can go, like **la Fontana di Trevi**, to make wishes? What do you think about the way the city of **Roma** is using the money thrown into the fountain?

Do you know of any other famous Italian or English films set in Italy? Try searching the Internet for more information on the Italian film industry, including films shot in Italy and clips of celebrated films.



Ben-Hur is known as one of the most successful films of all time.

Il cinema italiano

Italy is not just a backdrop setting for some successful and popular international films (e.g. *The Italian Job*, *The Godfather: Part III*, *A Room with a View*, *The Talented Mr. Ripley* and *Angels & Demons*); it is also home to a thriving film industry, which has existed for over 100 years.

With centuries of visual arts and theatre traditions, Italy took on cinema with great enthusiasm at the end of the 1800s. Many of the early works filmed in Italy were large-scale, spectacular epics that concentrated on historical topics—especially ancient Rome. These films were soon exported to the rest of world and popular actors rose to become cinema 'stars'.

In the 1930s, the **Cinecittà** (literally: 'Cinema City') studios were founded in **Roma** and the Italian film industry went through a period of modernisation. Production budgets increased in an attempt to compete with the American film industry; **Cinecittà** started to be called the 'Italian Hollywood' and was used for several large American productions, including the epic *Ben-Hur*.

Cinecittà was damaged during the Second World War so for a period after the war some films were shot out in the streets, often using non-professional actors. The use of 'real' locations and 'real' people led to the style of film named **Neorealismo** (new realism). These films reflected the problems of the post-war period, were set among the poor and working class and dealt with their everyday challenges. Among the most famous **Neorealismo** films are *Ladri di biciclette* (*Bicycle Thieves*) and *Roma, città aperta* (*Rome, Open City*).

In the 1950s and 1960s, the prevailing film genre in Italy was **la commedia all'italiana** (comedy Italian-style), which was full of social satire, sketches and gags. Italian art cinema also became popular during this time, with actors such as Sofia Loren and Marcello Mastroianni, and directors such as Federico Fellini and Luchino Visconti making their name in the international film industry.

Italian cinema is also famous for 'spaghetti westerns', a genre that became popular with the release of *Per un pugno di dollari* (*A Fistful of Dollars*) in 1964. Spaghetti westerns are simply Italian versions of famous Hollywood westerns. They were filmed in Italy on low budgets, yet are famous for their unique style of cinematography.



Sofia Loren



Recently Italian films have continued to have great success in and outside Italy. You may have heard of some of the more celebrated films such as **Nuovo Cinema Paradiso** and **La vita è bella**. Roberto Benigni is a famous Italian actor who starred in and directed **La vita è bella**. His performance in the film was critically acclaimed and it won him an Academy Award for Best Actor in a Leading Role.



Roberto Benigni



See if you can figure out the English title for this spaghetti western. Hint: it is also a famous Hollywood western.



Investigazione Linguistica

The pronoun **ci**

In the example to the right from the cartoon story at the beginning of the chapter, Alessandro refers to Australia using **ci**. The pronoun **ci** can be used to replace a place already mentioned. In this case, it means 'there'. Notice that **ci** goes *before* the verb.

Look at these examples:

- Quando vai a Roma?** When are you going to Rome?
Ci andrò dopodomani. I'm going (there) the day after tomorrow.
Ci sono stato ieri. I was there yesterday.
Non ci vado mai. I never go there.

Notice how in the above examples, **ci** replaces both the place and the preposition that appears before the place in the sentence.

E tu Alessandro, verrai in Australia?

Non ci sono mai stato, ma un giorno verrò!



Attività 10.6

Rewrite these sentences in your exercise book, replacing the place name with the pronoun **ci**.

Esempio Arriviamo in città domani sera. —> **Ci arriviamo domani sera.**

- 1 Ieri sono andata in palestra.
- 2 Siamo passati a casa di Nina prima di partire.
- 3 Giorgio ritornerà in Australia l'anno prossimo.
- 4 Le ragazze saranno a casa stasera.
- 5 Vieni anche tu al concerto?
- 6 Andrete sul Vesuvio domani?

Cosa farai da grande?



What will you be when you grow up?

In the cartoon story, Alessandro asked Melanie what she wants to be when she grows up. She likes Alessandro's suggestion of becoming an archaeologist, and her own ideas are to be a violinist or a swimming coach.

Here is a list of some occupations that may be part of your future aspirations.



il cuoco

l'architetto/l'architetta	the architect
l'attore/l'attrice	the actor/the actress
l'avvocato/l'avvocata	the lawyer
il ballerino/la ballerina	the dancer
il bibliotecario/la bibliotecaria	the librarian
il cameriere/la cameriera	the waiter/the waitress
il/la commerciante	the shopkeeper
il cuoco/la cuoca	the cook, the chef
il giardiniere/la giardiniera	the gardener
il/la giornalista	the journalist
l'idraulico/l'idraulica	the plumber
l'infermiere/l'infermiera	the nurse
il maestro/la maestra	the primary school teacher
il meccanico/la meccanica	the mechanic
il medico	the doctor
il minatore	the miner
il pilota	the pilot, the driver
il presentatore/la presentatrice	the TV/radio presenter
il professore/la professoressa	the high school teacher
lo scrittore/la scrittrice	the writer
il veterinario/la veterinaria	the veterinarian



la professoressa

Handy hint

Some occupations in Italian only have a masculine form that is used even when referring to a female (e.g. **Sara è medico**).

Professions ending in **-ista** can be masculine or feminine (e.g. **il giornalista**—a male journalist or **la giornalista**—a female journalist).

Talking about occupations

Use **fare** + definite article + occupation to say what you do/did/will do.

	Present tense	Imperfect tense	Future tense
Io	Faccio l'idraulico. I am a plumber.	Facevo l'idraulico. I was a plumber.	Farò l'idraulico. I will be a plumber.
Loro	Fanno i surfisti. They are surfers.	Facevano i surfisti. They were surfers.	Faranno i surfisti. They will be surfers.

Attività 10.7

Look at the list of occupations on page 176 again. What pattern can you see with occupations that end in **-tore** in the masculine form and their feminine equivalents? (There are three in the list that have both a masculine and feminine form.) What would the feminine forms of the occupations listed below be in Italian? Write your answers in your exercise book. Use a dictionary to look them up if you need help.

- 1 **l'agricoltore** the farmer
- 2 **l'indossatore** the model
- 3 **lo scultore** the sculptor
- 4 **il programmatore di computer** the computer programmer
- 5 **il giocatore** the player
- 6 **il calciatore** the soccer player
- 7 **l'albergatore** the hotel manager/owner
- 8 **il costruttore** the builder



la scultrice

Attività 10.8



Listen to the audio of people talking about occupations. In your exercise book, make a note in English of:

- their name
- their age
- where they live
- what occupation they have/did have/will have.

Esempio Alessandro – 22 – Rome – tour guide



Le professioni 'made in Italy'

These three occupations can be said to be 'made in Italy' either because they are unique to Italy or originate there.

Il gondoliere — Venetian gondolier

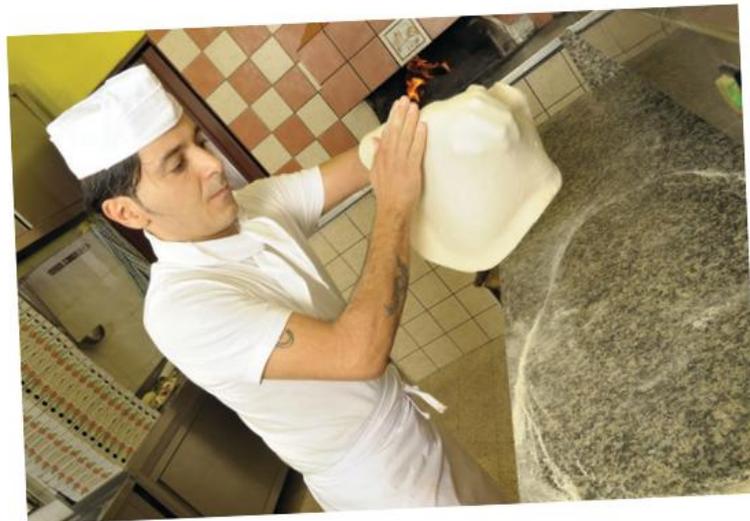
This is a highly prized job that was historically only available to men and is mostly only possible for Venetian locals to perform. The city of **Venezia** grants only 425 **gondoliere** licences at any point in time and there are years of training and a major exam to pass before one has the chance of entering **la Categoria** (the gondolier guild).

Il pizzaiolo/la pizzaiola — pizza maker

Pizza making is a traditional Italian occupation that requires several years of study and training. Most regions of Italy have specific legislations regarding the making of pizza and the role of the **pizzaiolo**. For example, the **Associazione Verace Pizza Napoletana** (True Neapolitan Pizza Association) believes that a pizza must be hand-kneaded and then baked in a wood-fired oven for no more than a minute and a half. There are even officially approved pizza-making courses with graduates going on to practise their skills in Italy and all over the world.

Il/la barista — specialist coffee maker

In many coffee shops in Italy you will find uniformed bartenders called **bariste** who specialise in making the finest quality coffee-based drinks. Traditionally, an Italian **barista** was trained to make alcoholic and coffee drinks, and the profession is treated with great respect among Italians.



Cosa pensi ?

Can you think of any occupations that are unique or particularly important in Australia and why do you think they are special to Australia?



Double negatives

You already know that to make a sentence negative, the word **non** is added before the verb. Sometimes negative pronouns or adverbs are used within the same sentence, which results in a sentence that has two negations (a double negative).

Look at these examples to see how a double negative works.

Io non faccio niente il venerdì sera.

I don't do anything on Friday nights./I do nothing on Friday nights.

Non faccio mai sport.

I never do sport./I don't ever do sport.

I bambini non sono ancora arrivati.

The children haven't arrived yet./The children have yet to arrive.

Loro non conoscono nessuno qui a Perth.

They don't know anyone here in Perth./They know no-one here in Perth.

A double negative is a two-part structure. Some of these structures were used in the examples above.

non... niente	nothing, not anything
non... più	no longer
non... mai	never, not ever
non... ancora	not yet
non... nessuno	nobody, no-one, not anyone
non... per niente	not at all



Tocca a te!

Working with a partner, take turns to say you don't do the following list of things. Use the **esempio** as a guide.

Esempio (non... più) giocare a cricket
Non gioco più a cricket.

- 1 (non... mai) mangiare la cioccolata
- 2 (non... più) andare in moto
- 3 (non... niente) comprare al mercato
- 4 (non... nessuno) vedere in piazza
- 5 (non... ancora) avere visitato il museo

Handy hint

Did you notice how the Italian examples can be translated in two ways in English, and how the two parts of the double negative go around the verb? In most cases the **non** will go before the verb and the other negative word will go after.



Writing a thankyou note

Grazie di tutto quello che avete fatto per noi mentre eravamo in Italia.



If you were in a position like the Australian students are in (i.e. saying goodbye and thank you), what would you write in a note to express your thanks in Italian? Here are some suggestions.

Italian expression	English translation
Ci teniamo in contatto!	Let's not lose contact.
Grazie, grazie, grazie!	Thank you, thank you, thank you!
Grazie di tutto.	Thank you for everything.
Grazie e arrivederci.	Thank you and goodbye.
Mi manchi/mancate già!	I already miss you (singular/plural)!
Mi mancherai/mancherete!	I will miss you (singular/plural)!
Non vedo l'ora di tornare.	I can't wait to return.
Mi sono divertito/a da morire!	I really enjoyed myself!
Sei/siete veramente gentile/i.	You are really kind.
Ti penserò sempre.	I'll always think of you.
Ti ringrazio di cuore.	I thank you from the bottom of my heart.

Handy hint

The **ti** in 'Ti ringrazio di cuore.' or 'Ti penserò sempre.' should be replaced with **vi** if you are writing to a group.

As you have already learnt, the two main words for saying goodbye are **arrivederci** (formal) and **ciao** (informal). **Addio** is another Italian word that means goodbye. It is used when it is highly unlikely that you will see each other again (e.g. in a relationship break-up). If you plan or even hope to see the person again, you will use **arrivederci**, which has the meaning of 'until we see each other again' (**α-** until; **ri-** again; **veder-** see; **ci-** each other).

Attività 10.9

Write a thankyou note, in Italian, for your Italian teacher to express your thanks after another year of learning Italian. You might want to tell your teacher what you liked most about Italian classes this year and what you plan to do with all the Italian that you have learnt. Be sure to sign off with an appropriate form of goodbye.

Ripasso

1 Translate these sentences into Italian.
Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a During the holidays we will go to the beach.
- b My brothers will study Italian next year.
- c Patrizio is a soccer player in Italy.
- d My mother was a cook but now she is a pilot.
- e Melanie is not an archaeologist, she is a student!
- f When I finish school I will be an actor.
- g I will eat all of this ice-cream.
- h They will need a car for the trip.

2 Using the pronoun *ci* and your knowledge of double negatives, translate these sentences into Italian. Write your answers in your exercise book.

- a I will not go there tomorrow.
- b I don't go there anymore.
- c I haven't been there yet.
- d I will never go there.
- e I won't go there because no-one is there.

3 Read the email that Fabio has written to Antonia to tell her what he's been up to and what he has planned for the weekend. Answer the questions that follow, in English, in your exercise book.



- a How does Fabio feel about school at the moment and what does he say about his maths class?
- b What has prompted Fabio's family to go away for the weekend and where are they planning to go?
- c Who will also be going with the family?
- d What are their travel plans?
- e What will Fabio do when he gets back home?

Riassunto

Now you can:

form and use the future tense (il futuro)

	-ARE verbs		-ERE verbs		-IRE verbs	
	cantare	to sing	scrivere	to write	dormire	to sleep
singular	(io) canterò	I will sing	(io) scriverò	I will write	(io) dormirò	I will sleep
	(tu) canterai	you will sing	(tu) scriverai	you will write	(tu) dormirai	you will sleep
	(lui/lei) canterà	he/she/it will sing	(lui/lei) scriverà	he/she/it will write	(lui/lei) dormirà	he/she/it will sleep
plural	(noi) canteremo	we will sing	(noi) scriveremo	we will write	(noi) dormiremo	we will sleep
	(voi) canterete	you will sing	(voi) scriverete	you will write	(voi) dormirete	you will sleep
	(loro) canteranno	they will sing	(loro) scriveranno	they will write	(loro) dormiranno	they will sleep

talk about future plans and occupations using il futuro

l'architetto/l'architetta	the architect
l'attore/l'attrice	the actor/the actress
l'avvocato/l'avvocata	the lawyer
il ballerino/la ballerina	the dancer
il bibliotecario/la bibliotecaria	the librarian
il cameriere/la cameriera	the waiter/the waitress
il/la commerciante	the shopkeeper
il cuoco/la cuoca	the cook, the chef
il giardiniere/la giardiniera	the gardener
il/la giornalista	the journalist
l'idraulico/l'idraulica	the plumber
l'infermiere/l'infermiera	the nurse
il maestro/la maestra	the primary school teacher
il meccanico/la meccanica	the mechanic
il medico	the doctor
il minatore	the miner
il pilota	the pilot, the driver
il presentatore/la presentatrice	the TV/radio presenter
il professore/la professoressa	the high school teacher
lo scrittore/la scrittrice	the writer
il veterinario/la veterinaria	the veterinarian

Use **fare** + definite article + occupation to say what you do/did/will do.

	Present tense	Imperfect tense	Future tense
Io	Faccio l'idraulico. I am a plumber.	Facevo l'idraulico. I was a plumber.	Farò l'idraulico. I will be a plumber.
Loro	Fanno i surfisti. They are surfers.	Facevano i surfisti. They were surfers.	Faranno i surfisti. They will be surfers.

use the pronoun ci

Quando vai a Roma?	When are you going to Rome?
Ci andrò dopodomani.	I'm going (there) the day after tomorrow.
Ci sono stato ieri.	I was there yesterday.
Non ci vado mai.	I never go there.

identify and use double negatives

non... niente	nothing, not anything
non... più	no longer
non... mai	never, not ever
non... ancora	not yet
non... nessuno	nobody, no-one, not anyone
non... per niente	not at all

Io non faccio niente il venerdì sera.
I don't do anything on Friday nights./I do nothing on Friday nights.

Non faccio mai sport.
I never do sport./I don't ever do sport.

I bambini non sono ancora arrivati.
The children haven't arrived yet./The children have yet to arrive.

Loro non conoscono nessuno qui a Perth.
They don't know anyone here in Perth./They know no-one here in Perth.

Key grammatical terms

What is it called?	What does it do?	Examples
Noun	Nouns are often called 'naming words'. They are people, animals, places and things.	L' accompagnatrice si chiama Nina . Roma è una bella città .
Adjective	Adjectives are words that describe nouns and will change according to the gender and number of the noun.	Le ragazze sono belle e alte . Il Colosseo è un campo antico .
Verb	Verbs are often called 'doing words'. They describe actions, feelings and being. A verb will change depending on who is doing the action, feeling or being.	Io sono a Roma. Dormi in camera da letto. Andate a scuola. Giochiamo a calcio.
Adverb	Adverbs are words that modify and tell us more about a verb, an adjective or another adverb.	Lei canta lentamente . Faccio atletica regolarmente .
Definite article	Definite articles are words that mean 'the'. There are seven definite articles in Italian: il, lo, l', la, i, gli and le .	Per colazione mangio le fette biscottate e bevo il caffè.
Indefinite article	Indefinite articles are words that mean 'a' or 'an'. There are four definite articles in Italian: un, uno, una and un' .	Vanessa ha un' anatra e una rana. Gioco a pallacanestro con un amico.
Subject pronoun	Subject pronouns indicate who we are talking about and who is performing an action. There are eight main subject pronouns in Italian: io, tu, lui, lei, Lei, noi, voi and loro .	Io vado a Roma. Lui parla con lei al telefonino. Tu e Alessandro mangiate la pizza.
Possessive pronoun	Possessive pronouns tell us who owns something or who something belongs to.	Il mio cane è piccolo. Sua sorella va in Francia.
Direct object pronoun	Direct object pronouns are used to replace a noun that has already been mentioned. There are four direct object pronouns in Italian: lo, la, li and le .	Ecco la maglietta! La predi? Parlo con Angelo. Lo conosci?
Preposition	Prepositions are 'function words' used in front of a noun. They show the relationship to another word (often another noun) in a sentence.	Loretta viene con me. Loro vanno in macchina.
Articulated preposition	Articulated prepositions are words that are a combination of a preposition with a definite article.	Sono nella mia casa. Vorrei andare all' estero.
Conjunction	Conjunctions are known as 'joining words'. They are used to link words, phrases and clauses together.	Oliver e Ali sono stanchi. Vuole venire ma non può.
Interrogative	Interrogatives are words that usually form and start a question.	Chi è quel ragazzo? Quanto costa quella chitarra?

Verb tables

essere (to be)

	Present		Present perfect	Imperfect	Future
singular	(io) sono (tu) sei (lui/lei) è	I am you are he/she/it is	(io) sono stato/a (tu) sei stato/a (lui/lei) è stato/a	(io) ero (tu) eri (lui/lei) era	(io) sarò (tu) sarai (lui/lei) sarà
plural	(noi) siamo (voi) siete (loro) sono	we are you are they are	(noi) siamo stati/e (voi) siete stati/e (loro) sono stati/e	(noi) eravamo (voi) eravate (loro) erano	(noi) saremo (voi) sarete (loro) saranno

avere (to have)

	Present		Present perfect	Imperfect	Future
singular	(io) ho (tu) hai (lui/lei) ha	I have you have he/she/it has	(io) ho avuto (tu) hai avuto (lui/lei) ha avuto	(io) avevo (tu) avevi (lui/lei) aveva	(io) avrò (tu) avrai (lui/lei) avrà
plural	(noi) abbiamo (voi) avete (loro) hanno	we have you have they have	(noi) abbiamo avuto (voi) avete avuto (loro) hanno avuto	(noi) avevamo (voi) avevate (loro) avevano	(noi) avremo (voi) avrete (loro) avranno

Irregular verbs

	dire (to say/to tell)	venire (to come)	uscire (to go out)	dare (to give)
singular	(io) dico (tu) dici (lui/lei) dice	(io) vengo (tu) vieni (lui/lei) viene	(io) esco (tu) esci (lui/lei) esce	(io) do (tu) dai (lui/lei) dà
plural	(noi) diciamo (voi) dite (loro) dicono	(noi) veniamo (voi) venite (loro) vengono	(noi) usciamo (voi) uscite (loro) escono	(noi) diamo (voi) date (loro) danno

Modal verbs

	dovere	to have to	potere	to be able to	volere	to want to
singular	(io) devo (tu) devi (lui/lei) deve	I have to you have to he/she/it has to	(io) posso (tu) puoi (lui/lei) può	I am able to you are able to he/she/it is able to	(io) voglio (tu) vuoi (lui/lei) vuole	I want to you want to he/she/it wants to
plural	(noi) dobbiamo (voi) dovete (loro) devono	we have to you have to they have to	(noi) possiamo (voi) potete (loro) possono	we are able to you are able to they are able to	(noi) vogliamo (voi) volete (loro) vogliono	we want to you want to they want to

The imperative (L'imperativo)

	-ARE verbs (girare—to turn)	-ERE verbs (prendere—to take)	-IRE verbs (finire—to finish)
imperative	(tu) gira (Lei) giri (voi) girate	(tu) prendi (Lei) prenda (voi) prendete	(tu) finisci (Lei) finisca (voi) finite
negative imperative	(tu) non girare (Lei) non giri (voi) non girate	(tu) non prendere (Lei) non prenda (voi) non prendete	(tu) non finire (Lei) non finisca (voi) non finite

The present perfect (Il passato prossimo)

	-ARE verbs	-ERE verbs	-IRE verbs
with essere	(io) sono andato/a	(io) sono caduto/a	(io) sono uscito/a
with avere	(io) ho mangiato	(io) ho venduto	(io) ho dormito
with reflexive verbs	(io) mi sono preparato/a	(io) mi sono messo/a	(io) mi sono divertito/a

The imperfect (L'imperfetto)

	parlare	to speak	piangere	to cry	preferire	to prefer
singular	(io) parlavo (tu) parlavi (lui/lei) parlava	I was speaking you were speaking he/she/it was speaking	(io) piangevo (tu) piangevi (lui/lei) piangeva	I was crying you were crying he/she/it was crying	(io) preferivo (tu) preferivi (lui/lei) preferiva	I preferred you preferred he/she/it preferred
plural	(noi) parlavamo (voi) parlavate (loro) parlavano	we were speaking you were speaking they were speaking	(noi) piangevamo (voi) piangevate (loro) piangevano	we were crying you were crying they were crying	(noi) preferivamo (voi) preferivate (loro) preferivano	we preferred you preferred they preferred

The future (Il futuro)

	cantare	to sing	scrivere	to write	dormire	to sleep
singular	(io) canterò (tu) canterai (lui/lei) canterà	I will sing you will sing he/she/it will sing	(io) scriverò (tu) scriverai (lui/lei) scriverà	I will write you will write he/she/it will write	(io) dormirò (tu) dormirai (lui/lei) dormirà	I will sleep you will sleep he/she/it will sleep
plural	(noi) canteremo (voi) canterete (loro) canteranno	we will sing you will sing they will sing	(noi) scriveremo (voi) scriverete (loro) scriveranno	we will write you will write they will write	(noi) dormiremo (voi) dormirete (loro) dormiranno	we will sleep you will sleep they will sleep

Irregular present perfects, imperfects and futures

Infinitive		Present perfect	
dire	to say	(io) ho detto	I said
fare	to do	(io) ho fatto	I did
leggere	to read	(io) ho letto	I read
mettere	to put	(io) ho messo	I put
nascere	to be born	(io) sono nato/a	I was born
prendere	to take	(io) ho preso	I took
rispondere	to respond	(io) ho risposto	I responded
scrivere	to write	(io) ho scritto	I wrote
vedere	to see	(io) ho visto	I saw

	-ARE verbs	-ERE verbs	-IRE verbs
imperfect	(io) facevo		(io) dicevo
future	(io) giocherò	(io) comincerò	
	(io) andrò		(io) verrò

Italian-English wordlist

a

a to (travel to), in (live in)
 a city, village, suburb,
 landmark or building
a cento metri within one
 hundred metres
a destra to the right
a domani until tomorrow,
 see you tomorrow
a dopo see you later
a piedi on foot
a più tardi see you later,
 until later
a pochi passi (da) a short
 distance (from)
a presto see you soon
a sinistra to the left
a, al, alla, all', allo, ai, alle,
agli at, to (the)
abbaiare to bark
abbastanza enough
abbigliamento clothing
abitare to live (somewhere)
abituare (a + inf) to
 accustom (to something)
accanto (a) beside, near
accesso login
accettare to accept
accidenti! damn!; oh my
 gosh!
accompagnare to go with
accompagnatore (m)
 chaperone
accompagnatrice (f)
 chaperone
acqua water
acquario aquarium
addormentarsi to fall asleep
adesso now
adorare to adore, to love
aereo plane
aeroplano aeroplane
aeroporto airport
affatto at all
agente (m/f) agent
agile/i agile
agitato/a/i/e agitated
agosto August
agricoltore (m) farmer
ahi! ouch!
aiutare to help, to assist
aiuto help
ala wing
albergatore (m) hotel
 manager/owner
albergo hotel
albero tree
all'angolo on the corner
all'aperto in the open (air),
 outdoors
alle at (time)
alle undici at eleven
 o'clock
allenamento training
allenarsi to work out
allenatore (m) coach, trainer
allenatrice (f) coach, trainer

allora in that case, then, so
alpinismo mountain climbing
alto/a/i/e tall
alzarsi to get up
ambientale/i environmental
ambiente (m) environment
America America
americano/a/i/e American
amico/a friend
anatra duck
anche also, too
anche a me me too
ancora still
andare to go
andare avanti to go
 forward
andare indietro to go back
anello (di fidanzamento)
 (engagement) ring
animale (m) animal
anno year
annoiarsi to get bored
antico/a/hi/he ancient
antipatico/a/i/he unpleasant
apertura opening
appartamento apartment
appena just
appuntamento date,
 appointment
aprile (m) April
aprire to open
aranciata orange (soft) drink
arancione/i orange (colour)
arbitro umpire, referee
archeologa (f) archaeologist
architetta (f) architect
architetto (m) architect
arrabbiarsi to get angry
arrampicata rock climbing
arrivare to arrive
arrivederci goodbye (formal)
arrivederla goodbye (formal)
artiglio claw
artista (m/f) artist
ascoltare to listen
ascoltatore (m) listener
aspettare to wait
atletica athletics
atletico/a/i/he athletic
attaccante (m/f) attacker,
 forward
attento/a/i/e careful
attore (m) actor
attraversare to cross (the
 road)
attrice (f) actress
aula classroom
Australia Australia
australiano/a/i/e Australian
Austria Austria
autobus (m) bus
automobilismo motor racing
autore (m) author
autrice (f) author
autunno autumn
avanti come in; come on
avanzare to move forward
avere to have

avere bisogno di...
 to need ...
avere caldo to be hot
 (body temperature)
avere fame to be hungry
avere freddo to be cold
 (body temperature)
avere fretta to be in a
 hurry
avere paura di... to be
 afraid of ...
avere ragione to be right
avere sete to be thirsty
avere sonno to be sleepy
avere torto to be wrong
avere una fame da lupo
 to be starving
avere voglia di... to feel
 like ...

avventura adventure
avventuroso/a/i/e
 adventurous
avvocata (f) lawyer
avvocato (m) lawyer
azzurro/a/i/e sky blue

b

baci kisses
bafo whisker
bagno bathroom
balcone (m) balcony
ballerina (f) dancer
ballerino (m) dancer
bambino child, little boy
bambola doll
banana banana
bancarella market stall
bancomat (m) automatic
 teller machine (ATM)
bar (m) bar, coffee bar
barattolo jar
barba beard
barca boat
basket (m) basketball
basso bass guitar
basso/a/i/e short
basta! enough!
basta per ora enough for
 now
batteria drums; battery
beato/a te! lucky you!
becco beak
beh... well ... (expression)
bei voti good marks
bel divertimento! what fun!
Belgio Belgium
bello/a/i/e beautiful
bene good, well
benissimo very good, very
 well
benvenuto/a/i/e welcome
benzina naturale natural
 gas
bere to drink
bianco/a/hi/he white
bibliotecaria (f) librarian
bibliotecario (m) librarian

bici (f, sing) bike
bicicletta bicycle
biglietteria ticket office
biglietto ticket
biglietto di corsa semplice
 one-way ticket
biologia biology
biondo/a/i/e blond (hair)
birichino/a/i/e cheeky
biscotto biscuit
bisogna (+ inf) it is necessary
 (to do)
bistecca steak
blog (m) blog
blu (inv) blue
bocca mouth
borsetta handbag
bosco forest
bottiglia bottle
boutique (f) fashion clothing
 shop
braccia (f, pl) arms
braccialetto bracelet
braccio arm
braccioli Floaties
Brasile (m) Brazil
brasiliano/a/i/e Brazilian
bravissimo/a/i/e very good
bravo/a/i/e good, nice
bravo/a/i/e! well done!
bungee jumping (m) bungee
 jumping
buono/a/i/e good; kind
buon appetito! enjoy your
 meal!
buon pomeriggio good
 afternoon
buon viaggio bon voyage,
 have a good trip
buona vacanza have a good
 holiday
buonanotte good night
buonasera good evening
buongiorno hello/good day
burro butter

C

c'è there is
c'è il sole it's sunny
c'è vento it's windy
c'era there was
cadere to fall
caffè (m) coffee
calciatore (m) soccer player
calcio soccer
calle (f) calle (narrow
 Venetian street)
camera (da letto) (bed)room
cameriera (f) waitress
cameriere (m) waiter
camminare to walk
campeggio camp
campo sporting ground,
 pitch
canale (m) canal
canarino canary
cancellare to delete

cane (m) dog
canino/a/i/e canine
canottaggio canoeing
cantante (m/f) singer
cantare to sing
canzone (f) song
capelli (pl) hair
capire to understand
capitale (f) capital (city)
capolavoro masterpiece
capoluogo main town
cappello hat
cappellino cap
carbone (m) carbon
carciofo artichoke
caricare to upload
carino/a/i/e pretty, cute
caro/a/i/e expensive, dear
carriera career
cartapesta papier-mâché
cartina map
cartoleria stationery shop
casa house, home
castano/a/i/e brown (hair)
cattivo/a/i/e bad
cavallo horse
CD di musica music CD
celebrare to celebrate
cellulare (m) mobile phone
cena dinner
cenare to dine/to have dinner
cento one hundred
centrocampista (m) midfielder
ceramica ceramic
cercare to search, to look for
cercare (di + inf) to try to (do something)
cereali (m, pl) cereals
certo certainly, of course
che that, what, whom
che barba! how boring!
che bello/a! he/she is cute!, how lovely!
che cos'è/che cosa sono? what is/what are?
che cosa dici! what do you mean!
che film vuoi vedere? what film do you want to see?
che folla! what a crowd!
che giorno è? what's the date?
che ore sono? what time is it?
che peccato! what a shame!
che strano! how strange!
che tempo fa? what's the weather like?
chi who
chi parla? who is speaking?
chiacchierata chat
chiamare to call
chiamarsi to call oneself
chiaramente clearly
chiedere to ask
chiesa church
chilo kilo
chimica chemistry
chitarra guitar

chitarra acustica acoustic guitar
chitarra elettrica electric guitar
chiudere to close
ci there; us, ourselves
ci incontriamo we'll meet
ci vediamo see you
ci vuole una vita you need a lifetime
ciao hi, bye
cibo food
ciclismo cycling
ciclista (m/f) cyclist
cinema (m) cinema
cinese/i Chinese
cinquanta fifty
cinque five
cioccolatino chocolate (candy)
cioccolato chocolate
circa about, around
clickare to click
cliente (m) customer
coda tail
cognome (m) surname
colazione (f) breakfast
collana necklace
collo neck
come how; like, similar to
com'è andato/a? how did it go?
come no! of course!
come si arriva...? how do you get to ...?
come si scrive? how do you spell ...?
come sta? how are you? (formal)
come stai? how are you? (informal)
come vola il tempo! how time flies!
comico/a/i/he funny, comical
cominciare to begin, to start
commerciante (m/f) shopkeeper
commessa (f) shop assistant
commesso (m) shop assistant
comodo/a/i/e comfortable
compagnia group
compagno mate, partner
compagno di classe classmate
competizione (f) competition
compiti (pl) homework
compleanno birthday
comprare to buy
computer computer
comunque in any case, anyway
con with
con grande cura with great care
concerto concert
confezione (f) regalo giftwrap
confine (m) border
coniglio rabbit
conoscere to know (someone or something)
consumare to consume
consumo elettrico energy consumption

contento/a/i/e happy, glad
continuare to continue
contribuire to contribute
controllare to check
coppa cup
coppa del mondo World Cup
coraggio! come on!
coraggioso/a/i/e brave
cornetto croissant
cornice (f) frame
corpo body
correre to run
corso main street
corto/a/i/e short
cosa thing; what
cos'è successo? what happened?
cosa fai? what are you doing?
cosa farai da grande? what will you be when you grow up?
così, così so-so
costano un occhio della testa they are really expensive
costantemente constantly
costoso/a/i/e expensive
costruttore (m) builder
costume (m) costume
costume da bagno swim suit
creativo/a/i/e creative
credere to believe
crema cream, custard
cremoso/a/i/e creamy
cricket (m) cricket
cucina kitchen, cooking, cuisine
cucinare to cook
cugina (f) cousin
cugino (m) cousin
culturale/i cultural
cuoco (f) cook, chef
cuoco (m) cook, chef
d
d'accordo all right then
d'oro of gold
da, dal, dalla, dall', dallo, dai, dalle, dagli from/by (the)
da leccarsi i baffi! it's finger-licking good!
da parte di tutti noi from all of us
da solo by oneself
dai! come on!
dai che ce la fai! you can do it!
Danimarca Denmark
dappertutto everywhere
dare to give
davanti in front; opposite
davanti (a) in front (of)
davvero really, indeed
decidere to decide
decimo/a/i/e tenth
delizioso/a/i/e delicious; delightful
dente (m) tooth
descrivere to describe

desidera? can I help you?/ what would you like?
desiderare to desire
di, del, della, dell', dello, dei, delle, degli from, of (the)
di cosa of what, what about
di fronte (a) opposite, facing, in front of
di nuovo again
di solito usually
dicembre December
diciannove nineteen
diciassette seventeen
diciotto eighteen
diedi ten
difendere to defend; to protect
difensore (m) defender
difesa defence
difficile/i difficult
dipingere to paint
dire to say, to tell
direzione (f) direction
discesa descent
discoteca disco
disegnare to design, to draw
dispiacersi to be sorry
dita (f, pl) fingers
dito (m) finger
diventare to become
divertente/i fun, funny
divertirsi to enjoy oneself
divisa uniform
DJ (m/f) DJ
documento document
dodici twelve
dolce (m) dessert
dolce/i sweet
dolorante/i sore, aching
domandare to ask
domani tomorrow
domenica Sunday
donna woman
dopo after, later
dopodomani day after tomorrow
dormire to sleep
dove where
dov'è where is
dove si trova...? where is/ where can you find ...?
dove sono where are
dovere to have to, must
droitto straight
due two
dunque so, well (then)
duomo main cathedral
durante during
durante le vacanze during the holidays
durare to last
duro/a/i/e hard
e
e and
e poi... and then ...
e già! of course!
è he/she/it is
è un po' tocco/a / pazzo/a he/she is a bit crazy
è/sono in offerta it is/they are on special

ecco here, here is, here are
educazione (f) fisica physical education
effetto effect
effetto serra greenhouse effect
elegante/i elegant
elettricità electricity
email (f) email
emozionante/i exciting
entrare to enter
entrata entrance (hall)
era ora about time
eroe (m) hero
esaurimento delle fonti energetiche exhaustion of energy resources
esercizio exercise
esperienza experience
esplorare to explore
esploratore (m) explorer
esploratrice (f) explorer
essere to be
essere all'ultima moda to be the latest fashion/trend
essere alla moda to be in fashion
essere in anticipo to be early
essere in ritardo to be late
essere nei guai to be in a pickle
estate (f) summer
età age

f

fa bel tempo it's nice weather
fa brutto tempo it's terrible weather
fa caldo it's hot
fa freddo it's cold
fa parte di... he/she/it is part of ...
fa schifo! it's disgusting!
facile/i easy
famiglia che mi ospita host family
famoso/a/i/e famous
fantastico/a/i/he fantastic
fare to do, to play (sports)
fare attenzione to take care, to pay attention
fare bella/brutta figura to make a good/bad impression
fare finta to pretend
fare l'upload to upload
fare presto to be quick
farsi la doccia to have a shower
farsi male to hurt oneself
farmacia pharmacy
favoloso/a/i/e fabulous
febbraio February
felice/i happy
fermare to stop
fermata (bus, tram) stop
fermo/a/i/e still
festa holiday, party
festa del lavoro Labour Day

festeggiare to celebrate
festival di musica music festival
fetta slice
fetta di pane slice of bread
fette (pl) biscottate crispbread
fico! cool!
figlia daughter
figlio son
film (m) film
film comici comedy films
film dell'orrore horror films
film di fantascienza science-fiction films
film drammatici drama films
film gialli thrillers
film romantici romantic (comedy) films
filosofia philosophy
finalmente! finally!
fine (f) end
finestra window
finire to finish
finito/a/i/e finished
Finlandia Finland
fino a until, till
fiorentino/a/i/e Florentine
fisica physics
fiume (m) river
flauto flute
football australiano Australian Rules football
forse maybe
forte/i strong
sei forte! you're great!
fortunatamente fortunately
fortunato/a/i/e fortunate, lucky
forza! come on!
forza Italia! come on Italy!
foto (f, sing/pl) photo(s)
fra in; between
fra poco soon
fra tre giorni/mesi/anni in three days/months/years
fragola strawberry
francese/i French
Francia France
fratellastro half-brother, stepbrother
fratellino little brother
fratello brother
fratello maggiore older brother
frigo fridge
frutta fruit
frutta e verdura fruit and vegetables
frutti di bosco fruits of the forest
fruttivendolo greengrocer
fungo mushroom
funzionare to work, to function
futuro future

g

gabinetto toilet
gamba leg
gara competition, contest

garage (m) garage
gatto cat
gelateria ice-cream shop
gelato ice-cream
al cioccolato chocolate-flavoured (ice-cream)
al torrone nougat-flavoured (ice-cream)
alla fragola strawberry-flavoured (ice-cream)
alla nocciola hazelnut-flavoured (ice-cream)
alla vaniglia vanilla-flavoured (ice-cream)
genitore (m) parent
gennaio January
Germania Germany
gettare to throw
già already
giacca jacket
giallo/a/i/e yellow
Giappone Japan
giapponese/i Japanese
giardiniera (f) gardener
giardiniere (m) gardener
giardino garden
ginocchia (f, pl) knees
ginocchio (m) knee
giocare (a) to play (a sport, game, toy)
giocatore (m) player
giocatrice (f) player
giochi olimpici Olympics
gioco game
gioielleria jewellery shop
gioiello jewel
giornale (m) newspaper
giornalista (m/f) journalist
giorno day
giovane/i young
giovedì (m) Thursday
girare to turn
giro tour, ride
Giro d'Italia Tour of Italy
giugno June
gladiatore (m) gladiator
gnam, gnam! yum, yum!
gnocco dumpling
gnomo gnome
gol (m) goal
golf (m) golf
gomito elbow
gonna skirt
grammatica grammar
grande/i big
grande magazzino department store
grandissimo/a/i/e very big
gratis free
grazie thank you
grazie di tutto thank you for everything
Grecia Greece
greco/a/i/he Greek
grigio/ia/i/e grey
gruppo band, group
quanto glove
guardare to look at, to watch (TV)
gusto taste, flavour
gusti alla crema cream flavours

gusti alla frutta fruit flavours

h

hotel (m) hotel

i

idea idea
idraulica (f) plumber
idraulico (m) plumber
ieri yesterday
imbarco boarding (point)
imbranato/a/i/e clumsy
immagine (f) image, picture
imparare to learn
importante/i important
impronta ecologica carbon footprint
in to (travel to), in (live in) states/territories, regions, countries, continents
in bocca al lupo! break a leg!/good luck!
in fondo at/to the end
incontrare to meet
incontrarsi con to meet with
incrocio intersection
indirizzo web address
indossatore (m) model
infatti as a matter of fact, in fact
infermiera (f) nurse
infermiere (m) nurse
Inghilterra England
inglese/i English
ingresso entrance
inizio beginning, start
innamorarsi to fall in love
insegnare to teach
insieme together
intelligente/i intelligent
interessante/i interesting
interessarsi to be interested in
interesse (m) interest, hobby
Internet (m) Internet
intervallo recess
inutile/i useless
invece on the other hand, instead
invece di instead of
inverno winter
inviare to send
invitare to invite
io I
Irlanda Ireland
isola island
Italia Italy
italiano/a/i/e Italian

j

jeans (m, pl) jeans

k

kayak (m) kayaking

l

là there
labbra (f, pl) lips
labbro (m) lip
lago lake
latino Latin
latte (m) milk

lavagna blackboard
lavanderia laundry
lavare to clean, to wash
lavarsi to wash oneself
lavorare to work
lavoro work, job
leggere to read
lei she, her
Lei you (formal)
Leone Leo (zodiac sign)
lettore MP3 MP3 player
lezione (f) lesson
li, le them (pronoun)
libanese/i Lebanese
Libano Lebanon
libreria bookshop
libretto booklet
libro book
liceo high school
liceo scientifico science high school
limonata lemonade
limone (m) lemon
lingua language; tongue
lingue straniere foreign languages
link (m) link
liscio/ia/i/e straight
litigare to argue, to fight
lo, la him, her, it (pronoun)
login (m) login
logout (m) logout
lontano/a/i/e far away
loro they; their; theirs
luce (f) light
lucertola lizard
luglio July
lui he, him
lunedì (m) Monday
lungo along
lungo/a/hi/he long
Lussemburgo Luxembourg

m

ma but
macché! of course not!
macchina car
macchina fotografica photographic camera
macelleria butcher
madre (f) mother
maestra (f) primary school teacher
maestro (m) primary school teacher
maggio May
maggiore/i older, bigger
magico/a/i/he magic
maglietta T-shirt
maglione (m) jumper
magnifico/a/i/he magnificent, amazing
magro/a/i/e slim
male badly; unwell
mal di denti toothache
mal di stomaco stomach-ache
mal di testa headache
sto male I feel sick
mamma mum
mamma mia! oh my gosh!
mancare to be missing
mandare to send

mandare un SMS a... to send a SMS to ...
mangiare to eat
mani (f, pl) hands
mano (f) hand
in mano in (somebody's hands)
mare (m) sea
margarina margarine
marito husband
marmellata jam
marrone/i brown
martedì (m) Tuesday
marzo March
maschera veneziana Venetian mask
matematica mathematics
materia subject
matrigna stepmother
mattina morning
stamattina this morning
me me
me ne frego! I couldn't care less!
meccanica (f) mechanic
meccanico (m) mechanic
medaglia d'oro gold medal
medico (m) doctor
meglio better
melodia melody
meno less
meno... di/che... less ... than ...
mentre while
meraviglioso/a/i/e wonderful, marvellous
mercoledì (m) Wednesday
mese (m) month
mese prossimo next month
metà half
mettere to put
mettersi to put on oneself
mi me
mi dispiace I'm sorry
mi fa venire l'acquolinain **bocca** (it) makes my mouth water
mi mangerei un cavallo! I could eat a horse!
miele (m) honey
migliore/i the best
mille grazie! thank you very much!
minatore (m) miner
mio/a/ei/e my
moda fashion
moderno/a/i/e modern
molto very, a lot
moltissimo/a/i/e very much
momento moment
mondo world
moneta coin
montagna mountain
morire to die
mostra exhibition, display
mostrare to show
motocross (m) motocross
motorino motor scooter
mountain biking (m) mountain biking
museo museum

musica music
musica classica classical music
musica elettronica electronic music
musica jazz jazz music
musica pop pop music
musica rap rap music
musica rock rock music
musicista (m/f) musician

n

nascere to be born
nascita birth
naso nose
natura nature
nave (f) ship
navigare su Internet to surf the Internet
nazionale/i national
negozio shop
negozio di abbigliamento clothing store
negozio di articoli sportivi sporting goods shop
negozio di (generi) alimentari general store
negozio di giocattoli toy shop
negozio di scarpe shoe shop
negozio di souvenir souvenir shop
neozelandese/i New Zealander
nero/a/i/e black
nervoso/a/i/e nervous
netball (m) netball
nevica it's snowing
niente nothing
nipote (m/f) grandson, granddaughter; nephew, niece
Nizza Nice (a city in France)
nocciola hazelnut
noi us, we
noioso/a/i/e boring
nome (m) name
nome utente (m) username
non not
non basta una vita! a lifetime isn't long enough!
non c'è bisogno di (+ inf) there's no need to (do)
non c'è male not too bad
non ci ho visto più I lost my temper
non importa never mind, it doesn't matter
non lo so I don't know
non m'importa I don't care
non mi va I don't feel like (it)
non preoccuparti don't worry
non sto bene I don't feel well
non vedo l'ora di (+ inf)... I can't wait until/to ...
non... ancora not yet
non... mai never, not ever
non... nessuno nobody, no-one, not anyone
non... niente nothing, not anything
non... per niente not at all
non... più no longer
nonna grandmother
nonno grandfather
nono/a/i/e ninth
nord (m) north
nostro/a/i/e our
notte (f) night
novanta ninety
nove nine
novembre November
numero number
il mio numero di telefono è... my phone number is ...
nuotare to swim
nuotatore (m) swimmer
nuotatrice (f) swimmer
nuoto swimming
Nuova Zelanda New Zealand
nuovo/a/i/e new

o

o or
occhi eyes
occhiali glasses, spectacles
occhiali da sole sunglasses
occhio eye
occidentale/i west, westerly
offerta donation; offer
oggetto object; subject (of an email)
oggi today
oliva olive
ombrello umbrella
onda wave
ondulato/a/i/e wavy
oppure or, otherwise
ora hour, time; (school) period
orario schedule, timetable
orecchie (f, pl) ears
orecchino earring
orecchio (m) ear
organizzato/a/i/e organised
orologio watch, clock
ospedale (m) hospital
ospite (m/f) guest, host
ottanta eighty
ottavo/a/i/e eighth
ottimo/a/i/e excellent
ottima idea! excellent idea!
otto eight
ottobre October
ovviamente obviously

p

pacchetto packet
padre (m) father
padrona owner
paesaggio landscape
paese (m) country
Paesi Bassi Netherlands
pagina web web page
palazzo building; palace
palestra gym

palla ball
pallacanestro (f) basketball
pallavolo (f) volleyball
palloncino balloon
pane (m) bread
panificio bakery
panino bread roll
papà (m) dad
Papa (m) Pope
papagallino budgie
pappagallo parrot
paracadutismo parachuting
parapendio paragliding
parco park
parlare to speak, to talk
parola word
parole lyrics; words
parte (f) part
partire to leave
partita game, match
passare to spend time
passatempo pastime
passaggiata walk, stroll
password (f) password
pasticceria cake shop
patata potato
patatine chips
patigno stepfather
paziente/i patient
pazzo/a/i/e crazy
Pechino Beijing
pedana elastica trampoline
peggiore/i the worst
pelle (f) leather
pelletteria leather goods shop
pelo fur
pensare to think
pensione (f) guest house
per for
per cortesia excuse me
per favore please
per niente for nothing
per cento per cent
perché because
perché? why?
perciò so, therefore, that is why
perdere to lose
perfetto/a/i/e perfect
pericoloso/a/i/e dangerous
perlina bead (jewellery)
permesso? may I?
permettere to allow
però but, however
persone (f, pl) people
pesca fishing; peach
pesce (m) fish
pescheria fishmonger
petrolio oil, petroleum
pettinarsi to brush one's hair
piacere to like; pleased to meet you
mi piace da morire! I'm mad about him/her/it!
piangere to cry
piano floor (of a building); softly; slowly
pianoforte (m) piano
piatti (pl) (DJ) turntable
piatto plate; dish
piazza town square

piccolo/a/i/e small, little
piede (m) foot
pigro/a/i/e lazy
pilota (m/f) pilot, driver
pinna fin
piove it's raining
piovere to rain
piscina swimming pool
pistacchio pistachio
pista (ski) slope
più more
più... di/che... more ... than ...
piuma feather
pizza margherita margherita pizza
pizzeria pizza restaurant
po' bit
un po' (di) a bit (of)
podcast (m) podcast
pollice (m) thumb
pomeriggio afternoon
ponte (m) bridge
popolare/i popular
porcellino d'India guinea pig
porta door; goal
portafoglio wallet
portare to wear; to carry
portiere (m) goalkeeper
Portogallo Portugal
posto place
potere to be able to
poverino/a/i/e! poor thing(s)!
povero/a/i/e poor
pranzo lunch
preferire to prefer
preferito/a/i/e favourite
prego you're welcome
prendere to catch, to get, to take
preoccuparsi to be worried
preparare to prepare
prepararsi to prepare oneself, to get ready
presentare to introduce
presentatore (m) TV/radio presenter
presentatrice (f) TV/radio presenter
presto soon, early
previsioni (f, pl) del tempo weather forecast
prezzo price
primavera spring
primo/a/i/e first
principale/i main
problema (m) problem
proccuparsi to worry
non preoccuparti don't worry
prof (m/f) teacher
professore (m) high school teacher
professoressa (f) high school teacher
profumeria beauty products, perfume shop
profumo perfume
progetto project
programmatore (m) di computer computer programmer

pronto ready; hello (when answering the phone)
proprio really
proprio/a/i/e own
prosciutto ham
protagonista (m/f) protagonist, lead role
provare (a + inf) to try (to do something)
psicologa (f) psychologist
psicologo (m) psychologist
pullman (m) bus, coach
purtroppo unfortunately

Q

qual?/quale?/quali? which?
qual è?/quali sono? which is?/which are?
qual è il problema? what is the problem?
qual è il tuo numero di telefono? what is your phone number?
qualche volta sometimes
qualcosa something
quando when
quanto how much
quanto mi piace I really like (him/her/it)
quaranta forty
quarto/a/i/e fourth
quattordici fourteen
quattro four
quello, quella, quei/quegli, quelle that, those (adj)
quello, quella, quelli, quelle that, those (pronoun)
questo/a/i/e this
qui here
qui vicino near here
quindi well then, so, therefore
quindici fifteen
quinto/a/i/e fifth

R

racchetta racquet
raccogliere to collect
ragazza girl, girlfriend
ragazzo boy, boyfriend
rana frog
raramente rarely
regalo gift
regione (f) region
Regno Unito United Kingdom
regolarmente regularly
religione (f) religion
residenza residence/place where you live
responsabilità responsibility
riccio/ia/i/e curly
ricerca study, survey
ricetta recipe
riciclare to recycle
ricordarsi to remember
ricotta ricotta
ricreazione (f) recess (at school)
ridere to laugh
rimanere to remain
rio (narrow) canal
riposarsi to rest

riscaldamento globale global warming
risk risk
rispondere to respond
risposta answer
ristorante (m) restaurant
ritmo rhythm
ritornare to return
riuscire (a + inf) to manage (to do)
riva quay
rivedere to see again
rivedersi to see each other again
robusto/a/i/e robust, strong
roditore (m) rodent
Roma Rome
romano Roman
romantico/a/i/he romantic
rompersi to break down
rosa (inv) pink
rosso/a/i/e red
rosticceria take-away shop
rotondo/a/i/e round
rotto/a/i/e broken
rovina ruin
rucola rocket (leaf vegetable)
rugby (m) rugby
rumore (m) noise

S

sabato Saturday
sala hall, room
sala d'arrivo arrivals hall/room
sala da pranzo dining room
salire to go up
salotto lounge room
salsiccia sausage
saltare to jump
salumeria delicatessen
salutare to say hello, to greet
saluti regards (in an email)
saluto greeting
salvare to save
salvo/a/i/e safe, unharmed
Samoa Samoa
samoano/a/i/e Samoan
sano/a/i/e sound, healthy
sapere to know (a fact)
sassofono saxophone
sbarco landing
sbrigharsi to hurry up
scala staircase
scalare to climb
scappare to run away
scaricare to download
scarpa shoe
scarpe di ginnastica training/running shoes
scelta choice
scena scene
scendere to descend, to get off, to disembark
scheda card
scheletro skeleton
scherzare to joke
scherzo! I'm joking!
scherzo joke
schiena back

sci (m, sing) skiing
sciare to ski
sciarpa scarf
scienze (pl) science
scimmia monkey
scivolone (m) slide, fall
scoiattolo squirrel
sconto discount
scorso/a/i/e last, past
scrittore (m) writer
scrittrice (f) writer
scrivere to write, to spell
scrivimi presto write soon
scudo shield
scultore (m) sculptor
scuola school
scusare to excuse, to forgive
scusa sorry, excuse me (informal)
scusi sorry, excuse me (formal)
se if
secondo second (time)
secondo/a/i/e second
secondo me in my opinion
sedere bottom, backside
sedici sixteen
segnare to score
segno zodiacale zodiac sign
seguire to follow
seguito/a/i/e popular, followed
sei six
semaforo traffic lights
sembrare to seem
sempre always
sempre dritto straight ahead
sentire to hear
sentirsi to feel
senz'altro of course
sera evening
serio/ia/i/e serious
serpente (m) snake
sessanta sixty
sesto/a/i/e sixth
sette seven
settembre September
settimana week
settimana prossima next week
settimo/a/i/e seventh
severo/a/i/e strict
sfacciato/a/i/e cheeky
sfilata di moda fashion show
sicuramente certainly
sicuro/a/i/e secure, sure
signora madam, Mrs (title)
signore (m) sir, Mr (title)
signorina miss, Miss (title)
silenzioso quiet
simpatico/a/i/he kind, likeable, nice
sito web (m) website
skateboard (m) skateboard
smettere to stop
smettita! stop it!
SMS (m) SMS
socievole/i friendly
soggiorno living room
soldi (pl) money

solo only
soltanto (se) only (if)
soprannome (m) nickname
sorella sister
sorellastra half-sister, stepsister
spaghetti (pl) spaghetti
Spagna Spain
spagnolo/a/i/e Spanish
spalla shoulder
spaventarsi to get frightened
specchio mirror
speciale/i special
spegnere to switch off
spendere to spend
sperare to hope
spesa shopping
spesso often, frequently
spiaggia beach
splendere to shine
spogliarsi to undress oneself
sport estremi extreme sports
sportivo/a/i/e sporty
squadra team
squama fish scale
stadio stadium
stagione (f) season
stanco/a/hi/he tired
stare to be, to stay
stasera this evening, tonight
statua statue
stazione (f) station
stesso/a/i/e same
stomaco stomach
storia history
storia dell'arte art history
strada road
straniero/a/i/e foreign
strano/a/i/e strange, weird
strumento musical instrument
studentessa (f) student
studiare to study
studio study
stupendo/a/i/e splendid, terrific
subito straight away, immediately
succo juice
succo d'arancia orange juice
succo di frutta fruit juice
Sudafrica (m) South Africa
sudafricano/a/i/e South African
Sudan (m) Sudan
sudanese/i Sudanese
sugo sauce (pasta sauce)
suo/a/oi/e his, her, its, your (formal, singular)
suonare to play
suoneria ringtone
supermercato supermarket
surf (m) surfing
svegliarsi to wake up
svelto/a/i/e quick, fast
Svezia Sweden
Svizzera Switzerland
svizzero/a/i/e Swiss

t
tanto/a much, a lot of
tanti/e many
tardi late
tartaruga turtle
tastiera keyboard
tasto d'invio enter key
tavolo table
tè (m) tea
tedesco/a/hi/he German
teledramma (m) television drama
telefonare (a) to telephone (someone)
telefonino mobile phone
televisione (f) television
tempo time; weather; tempo
temporale (m) thunderstorm
tennis (m) tennis
terra Earth, ground
terrazzo balcony, sun deck
terzo/a/i/e third
tesoro (little) darling
testa head
timido/a/i/e shy
tirare to shoot (for goal); to pull
tirare vento to blow wind
topo mouse
torace (m) chest
torinare to return, to come back
torrone (m) nougat
torta cake
tra between, in (time)
traffico traffic
tranquillo/a/i/e calm, quiet
tre three
tre dici thirteen
treno train
trenta thirty
tromba trumpet
troppo/i/a/e too much
trovare to find
tu you (informal, singular)
tu/o/oi/e your (informal, singular)
turista (m/f) tourist
tuta sportiva tracksuit
tutti all, everybody
tutto everything

U
uccello bird
ufficio postale post office
ultimo/a/i/e last, latest
undici eleven
unico/a/i/he unique
un, uno, un' a/an
uno one
urlare to shout
usare to use
uscire to go out
uscita logout; exit
utile/i useful

V
va bene OK, alright
vacanza holiday, vacation
vai! go!
vaniglia vanilla
vaporetto water-bus

vaso vase
vecchio/ia/i/e old
vedere to see
vedersi to see oneself; to see each other
vegetariano/a/i/e vegetarian
vela sailing
veloce/i fast, quick
vendere to sell
venerdì (m) Friday
Venezia Venice
venire to come
venti twenty
venticinque twenty-five
ventidue twenty-two
ventinove twenty-nine
ventiquattro twenty-four
ventisei twenty-six
ventisette twenty-seven
ventitré twenty-three
ventotto twenty-eight
ventuno twenty-one
veramente really
verde/i green
verdura vegetable
verità truth
vero/a/i/e true
verso toward; around (time)
vestirsi to get dressed
veterinaria (f) veterinarian
veterinario (m) veterinarian
vetro glass
viaggiare to travel
viaggio/i journey, trip
vicino (a) near
vicino/a/i/e near, close
videogioco video game
Vietnam Vietnam
vietnamita (m/f) Vietnamese
vigile (m) traffic policeman
vincere to win
vincitore (m) winner
vincitrice (f) winner
viola (inv) purple
violinista (m/f) violinist
violino violin
visitare to visit
vita life
voi you (plural)
volare to fly
volere to want
vorrei I would like
volta time; turn
vostro/a/i/e your (plural)
voto mark (at school)
vulcano volcano

W
windsurf (m) windsurfing

Y
yogurt (m) yoghurt

Z
zainetto small backpack
zaino backpack
zampa paw
zero zero
zia aunt
zio uncle
zitto/a/i/e! be quiet!
zucchero sugar

English-Italian wordlist

A

a/an un, uno, un'
a (little) bit un po'
a lifetime isn't long enough! non basta una vita!
a short distance (from) a pochi passi (da)
about circa, verso
about time era ora
to accept accettare
to accustom (to something) abituare (a qualcosa)
actor attore (m)
actress attrice (f)
to adore adorare
adventure avventura
adventurous avventuroso/a/i/e
aeroplane aeroplano
after dopo
afternoon pomeriggio
again di nuovo
age età
agent agente (m/f)
agile agile/i
agitated agitato/a/i/e
airport aeroporto
all tutti/e
all right then d'accordo
to allow permettere
along lungo
already già
also anche
always sempre
America America
American americano/a/i/e
ancient antico/a/hi/he
and e
and then ... e poi...
animal animale (m)
answer risposta
apartment appartamento
apartment building palazzo
April aprile
aquarium acquario
archaeologist archeologa (f), archeologo (m)
architect architetta (f), architetto (m)
to argue litigare
arm braccio (m)
arms braccia (f)
around verso; circa
arrivals hall/room sala d'arrivo
to arrive arrivare
art history storia dell'arte
artichoke carciofo
artist artista (m/f)
as a matter of fact infatti
to ask chiedere, domandare
at (the) a, al, alla, all', allo, ai, alle, agli
at (time) alle

at eleven o'clock alle undici

at all affatto
at/to the end in fondo
athletic atletico/a/i/he
athletics atletica
attacker attaccante (m/f)
August agosto
aunt zia
Australia Australia
Australian australiano/a/i/e
Australian Rules football football (m) australiano
Austria Austria
author autore (m), autrice (f)
automatic teller machine (ATM) bancomat (m)
autumn autunno

B

back schiena
backpack zaino
small backpack zainetto
backside sedere (m)
bad cattivo/a/i/e
bakery panificio
balcony balcone (m), terrazzo
ball palla
balloon palloncino
banana banana
band gruppo
bar bar (m)
to bark abbaiare
basketball basket (m), pallacanestro (f)
bathroom bagno
to be essere, stare
to be able to potere
to be afraid of ... avere paura di...
to be born nascere
to be cold (body temperature) avere freddo
to be hot (body temperature) avere caldo
to be hungry avere fame
to be in a hurry avere fretta
to be in a pickle essere nei guai
to be in fashion essere alla moda
to be the latest fashion/trend sono all'ultima moda
to be interested in interessarsi
to be late essere in ritardo
to be missing mancare
to be necessary essere necessario
to be quick fare presto
to be right avere ragione
to be sleepy avere sonno
to be sorry dispiacersi
to be thirsty avere sete
to be worried preoccuparsi
to be wrong avere torto
be quiet! zitto/a/i/e!
beach spiaggia
bead (jewellery) perlina
beak becco
beard barba
beautiful bello/a/i/e
because perché
to become diventare
(bed)room camera (da letto)
to begin cominciare
beginning inizio
Beijing Pechino
Belgium Belgio
to believe credere
beside accanto (a)
better meglio
between tra
(the) best il/la migliore, i/le migliori
bicycle bicicletta
big grande/i
very big grandissimo/a/i/e
bike bici (f, sing)
biology biologia
bird uccello
birth nascita
birthday compleanno
biscuit biscotto
bit po'
black nero/a/i/e
blackboard lavagna
blog blog (m)
blond (hair) biondo/a/i/e
to blow wind tirare vento
blue blu (inv)
boarding (point) imbarco
boat barca
body corpo
bon voyage buon viaggio, buona vacanza
book libro
bookshop libreria
booklet libretto
border confine (m)
boring noioso/a/i/e
bottle bottiglia
boy ragazzo
bracelet braccialetto
brave coraggioso/a/i/e
Brazil Brasile (m)
Brazilian brasiliano/a/i/e
bread pane (m)
bread roll panino
break a leg! in bocca al lupo!
to break down rompersi
breakfast colazione (f)
bridge ponte (m)
broken rotto/a/i/e
brother fratello
brown castano/a/i/e (hair); marrone/i
to brush one's hair pettinarsi

budgie papagallino
builder costruttore (m)
bungee jumping bungee jumping (m)
bus autobus (m), pullman (m)
bus stop fermata (dell'autobus)
but ma, però
butcher macellaia
butter burro
to buy comprare
by oneself da solo

C

cake torta
cake shop pasticceria
to call chiamare
to call oneself chiamarsi
calle (narrow Venetian street) calle (f)
calm tranquillo/a/i/e
camp campeggio
canal canale (m); rio
canary canarino
canine canino/a/i/e
canoeing canottaggio
cap cappellino
capital (city) capitale (f)
car macchina
carbon carbone (m)
carbon footprint impronta ecologica
career carriera
careful attento/a/i/e
cat gatto
to catch prendere
cathedral duomo
to celebrate celebrare, festeggiare
ceramic ceramica
cereals cereali (m, pl)
certainly sicuramente, certo
chaperone accompagnatore (m), accompagnatrice (f)
chat chiacchierata
to check controllare
cheeky birichino/a/i/e; sfacciato/a/i/e
chemistry chimica
chest torace (m)
child (little boy/girl) bambino, bambina
Chinese cinese/i
chips patatine
chocolate cioccolato
chocolate (candy) cioccolatino
chocolate-flavoured al cioccolato
choice scelta
church chiesa
cinema cinema (m)
classroom aula
claw artiglio
to clean lavare
clearly chiaramente
to click cliccare

to climb scalare
clock orologio
to close chiudere
clothing abbigliamento
clothing store negozio di abbigliamento
clumsy imbranato/a/i/e
coach allenatore (m), allenatrice (f)
coffee caffè (m)
coin moneta
to collect raccogliere
to come venire
come in avanti
come on! forza!, coraggio!, dai!
come on Italy! forza Italia!
comfortable comodo/a/i/e
competition competizione (f), gara
computer computer (m)
computer programmer programmatore (m) di computer
concert concerto
constantly costantemente
to consume consumare
to continue continuare
to contribute contribuire
to cook cucinare
cook cuoca (f), cuoco (m)
cool! fico!
costume costume (m)
country paese (m)
cousin cugina (f), cugino (m)
cream crema
cream flavours gusti alla crema
creamy cremoso/a/i/e
creative creativo/a/i/e
cricket cricket (m)
crispbread fette (pl) biscottate
croissant cornetto
to cross (the road) attraversare
to cry piangere
cultural culturale/i
cup coppa
curly riccio/ia/i/e
customer cliente (m/f)
cute carino/a/i/e
cycling ciclismo
cyclist ciclista (m/f)

d
dad papà
damn! accidenti!
dancer ballerina (f), ballerino (m)
dangerous pericoloso/a/i/e
date appuntamento
daughter figlia
day giorno
day after tomorrow dopodomani
December dicembre
to decide decidere
to defend difendere
defender difensore (m)
defence difesa

to delete cancellare
delicatessen salumeria
delicious delizioso/a/i/e
Denmark Danimarca
department store grande magazzino
to descend scendere
descent discesa
to describe descrivere
to design disegnare
to desire desiderare
to die morire
difficult difficile/i
to dine cenare
dining room sala da pranzo
dinner cena
direction direzione (f)
disco discoteca
discount sconto
display mostra
DJ DJ (m/f)
to do fare
doctor medico, dottore (m), dottoressa (f)
document documento
dog cane (m)
doll bambola
donation offerta
door porta
to download scaricare
to drink bere
driver pilota (m/f)
drums batteria
duck anatra
dumpling gnocco
during durante
during the holidays durante le vacanze

e
ear orecchio
earring orecchino
ears orecchie (f)
early presto
Earth terra
easy facile/i
to eat mangiare
I could eat a horse! mi mangerei un cavallo!
effect effetto
eight otto
eighteen diciotto
eightth ottavo/a/i/e
eighty ottanta
elbow gomito
electricity elettricità
elegant elegante/i
eleven undici
email email (f)
end fine (f)
energy consumption consumo elettrico
engagement ring anello di fidanzamento
England Inghilterra
English inglese/i
to enjoy oneself divertirsi
enjoy your meal! buon appetito!
enough abbastanza
enough! basta!

enough for now basta per ora
to enter entrare
enter key tasto d'invio
entrance ingresso, entrata
environment ambiente (m)
environmental ambientale/i
evening sera
everything tutto
everywhere dappertutto
excellent ottimo/a/i/e
excellent idea! ottima idea!
exciting emozionante/i
to excuse scusare
excuse me scusa (informal), scusi (formal)
exercise esercizio
exhaustion of energy resources esaurimento delle fonti energetiche
expensive costoso/a/i/e, caro/a/i/e
they are really expensive costano un occhio della testa
experience esperienza
to explore esplorare
explorer esploratore (m), esploratrice (f)
extreme sports sport estremi
eye occhio
eyes occhi

f
fabulous! favoloso/a/i/e!
to fall cadere
to fall asleep addormentarsi
to fall in love innamorarsi
famous famoso/a/i/e
fantastic fantastico/a/i/the
far away lontano/a/i/e
farmer agricoltore (m)
fashion moda
fashion clothing shop boutique (f)
fashion show sfilata di moda
fast veloce/i
father padre (m)
favourite preferito/a/i/e
feather piuma
February febbraio
to feel sentirsi
to feel like ... avere voglia di...
I don't feel like (it) non mi va
to feel sick stare male
fifteen quindici
fifth quinto/a/i/e
fifty cinquanta
film film (m)
comedy films film comici
drama films film drammatici
horror films film dell'orrore
romantic (comedy) films film romantici

science-fiction films film di fantascienza
thrillers film gialli
fin pinna
finally! finalmente!
to find trovare
finger dito (m)
fingers dita (f)
to finish finire
finished finito/a/i/e
Finland Finlandia
first primo/a/i/e
fish pesce (m)
fish scale squama
fishing pesca
fishmonger pescheria
five cinque
flavour gusto
Floaties bracciali
floor (of a building) piano
Florentine fiorentino/a/i/e
flute flauto
to fly volare
to follow seguire
food cibo
foot piede (m)
for per
for nothing per niente
foreign straniero/a/i/e
foreign languages lingue straniere
forest bosco
fortunate fortunato/a/i/e
fortunately fortunatamente
forty quaranta
four quattro
fourteen quattordici
fourth quarto/a/i/e
frame cornice (f)
France Francia
free gratis
French francese/i
Friday venerdì (m)
fridge frigo
friend amico/a
friendly socievole/i
frog rana
from (the) da, dal, dalla, dall', dallo, dai, dalle, dagli
from all of us da parte di tutti noi
fruit frutta
fruit and vegetables frutta e verdura
fruit flavours gusti alla frutta
fruit juice succo di frutta
fruits of the forest frutti di bosco
fun divertente/i
funny comico/a/i/he
fur pelo
future futuro

g
game gioco; partita
garage garage (m)
garden giardino
gardener giardiniera (f), giardiniere (m)
general store negozio di (generi) alimentari

German tedesco/a/hi/he
Germany Germania
to get angry arrabbiarsi
to get bored annoiarsi
to get dressed vestirsi
to get frightened spaventarsi
to get up alzarsi
gift regalo
giftwrap confezione (m)
 regalo
girl ragazza
to give dare
gladiator gladiatore (m)
glass vetro
glasses occhiali
global warming
 riscaldamento globale
glove guanto
gnome gnomo
to go andare
to go back andare
 indietro
to go forward andare
 avanti
to go out uscire
to go up salire
to go with accompagnare
go! vai!
goal gol (m)
goalkeeper portiere (m)
gold medal medaglia d'oro
gold golf (m)
good bene; bravo/a/i/e
very good benissimo;
 bravissimo/a/i/e
goodbye (formal)
 arriverdela, arriverderci
goodbye (informal) ciao
good afternoon buon
 pomeriggio
good evening buonasera
good marks bei voti
good night buonanotte
grammar grammatica
granddaughter nipote (f)
grandfather nonno
grandmother nonna
grandson nipote (m)
Greece Grecia
Greek greco/a/i/he
green verde/i
greengrocer fruttivendolo
greenhouse effect effetto
 serra
greeting saluto
grey grigio/a/i/e
group gruppo
guest ospite (m)
guest house pensione (f)
guinea pig porcellino d'India
guitar chitarra
acoustic guitar chitarra
 acustica
bass guitar basso
electric guitar chitarra
 elettrica
gym palestra

h

hair capelli (pl)
half metà
ham prosciutto

hand mano (f)
in (somebody's) hand in
 mano
hands mani (f)
handbag borsetta
happy felice/i, contento/a/i/e
hard duro/a/i/e
hat cappello
to have avere
to have a shower farsi la
 doccia
to have to dovere
hazelnut nocciola
hazelnut-flavoured alla
 nocciola
he lui
he is a bit crazy è un po'
 tocco/pazzo
he's cute! che bello!
head testa
headache mal di testa
healthy sano/a/i/e
hello ciao; buongiorno;
 pronto (on the phone)
to help aiutare
can I help you? desidera?
help aiuto
here qui
here is/are ecco
hero eroe (m)
hi ciao
high school liceo
high school teacher
 professore (m),
 professoressa (f)
his suo/a/oi/e
history storia
holiday festa; vacanza
homework compiti (pl)
honey miele (m)
to hope sperare
horse cavallo
hospital ospedale (m)
host family famiglia che mi
 ospita
hotel albergo, hotel (m)
hotel manager/owner
 albergatore (m)
hour ora
house casa
how come
how are you? come sta?
 (formal); come stai?
 (informal)
how boring! che barba!
how did it go? com'è
 andato/a?
how do you get to ...?
 come si arriva...?
how do you spell ...?
 come si scrive?
how lovely! che bello!
how much? quanto?
how strange! che strano!
how time flies! come vola
 il tempo!
to hurry up sbrigarsi
to hurt oneself farsi male
husband marito

i

I io

I can't wait until ... non vedo
 l'ora di (+ inf)...
I couldn't care less! me ne
 frego!
I don't care non m'importa
I don't know non lo so
I lost my temper non ci ho
 visto più
I need to ... ho bisogno di...
I would like vorrei
I'm mad about him/her/it!
 mi piace da morire!
I'm starving! ho una fame
 da lupo!
ice-cream gelato
ice-cream shop gelateria
idea idea
image immagine (f)
important importante/i
in a (city, village, suburb,
 landmark or building); in
 (states, territories, regions,
 countries or continents)
in any case comunque
in front (of) davanti (a)
in my opinion secondo me
in that case allora
in the open (air)
 all'aperto
in fra (time)
in three days/months
years fra tre giorni/mesi/
 anni
intelligent intelligente/i
interest interesse (m)
interesting interessante/i
Internet Internet (m)
intersection incrocio
to introduce presentare
to invite invitare
Ireland Irlanda
island isola
it (pronoun) lo, la
it makes my mouth water
 mi fa venire l'acquolina
 in bocca
it is necessary
 è necessario
it is/they are on special
 è/sono in offerta
it's cold fa freddo
it's disgusting! fa schifo!
it's finger-licking good!
 è da leccarsi i baffi!
it's hot fa caldo
it's nice weather fa bel
 tempo
it's raining piove
it's snowing nevica
it's sunny c'è il sole
it's terrible weather fa
 brutto tempo
it's windy c'è vento
its suo/a/oi/e
Italian italiano/a/i/e
Italy Italia

j

jacket giacca
jam marmellata
January gennaio
Japan Giappone

Japanese giapponese/i
jar barattolo
jeans jeans (m, pl)
jewel gioiello
jewellery shop gioielleria
to joke scherzare
joke scherzo
journalist giornalista (m/f)
journey viaggio
juice succo
July luglio
to jump saltare
juniper ginepro (m)
June giugno
just appena

k

kayaking kayak (m)
keyboard tastiera
kilo chilo
kind simpatico/a/i/he;
 buono/a/i/e
kiss bacio
kitchen cucina
knee ginocchio (m)
knees ginocchia (f)
to know (a fact) sapere
**to know (someone or
 something)** conoscere

l

Labour Day festa del lavoro
lake lago
landing sbarco
landscape paesaggio
language lingua
to last durare
last (latest) ultimo/a/i/e
last (past) scorso/a/i/e
late tardi
later dopo
Latin latino
to laugh ridere
laundry lavanderia
lawyer avvocatessa (f),
 avvocato (m)
lazy pigro/a/i/e
to learn imparare
leather pelle (f)
leather goods shop
 pelletteria
to leave partire
Lebanese libanese/i
Lebanon Libano
left sinistra
to the left a sinistra
leg gamba
lemon limone (m)
lemonade limonata
Leo (zodiac sign) Leone (m)
less meno
less ... than ... meno... di/
 che...
lesson lezione (f)
librarian bibliotecaria (f),
 bibliotecario (m)
life vita
light luce (f)
to like piacere
link link (m)
lip labbro (m)
lips labbra (f)

to listen ascoltare, sentire
listener ascoltatore (m)
little piccolo/a/i/e
little brother fratellino
little darling tesoro
to live (somewhere) abitare
living room soggiorno
lizard lucertola
login accesso, login (m)
logout logout (m), uscita
long lungo/a/hi/he
to look guardare
to lose perdere
lounge room salotto
lucky you! beato/a te!
lunch pranzo
Luxembourg Lussemburgo
lyrics parole

M

madam, Mrs (title) signora
magic magico/a/i/he
magic magico/a/i/he
magnificent magnifico/a/i/he
main principale/i
main street corso
main town capoluogo
to make fare
to make a good/bad impression fare bella/brutta figura
to manage (to do) riuscire (a + inf)
many tantissime/i
map cartina
March marzo
margarine margarina
margherita pizza pizza margherita
mark (at school) voto
market stall bancarella
masterpiece capolavoro
mate compagno

classmate compagno di classe
mathematics matematica
May maggio
may I? permesso?
maybe forse
me me, -mi (suffix)

me too anche a me
mechanic meccanica (f), meccanico (m)
to meet incontrare, incontrarsi

we'll meet ci incontriamo
melody melodia
midfielder centrocampista (m)
milk latte (m)
miner minatore (m)
mirror specchio
miss, Miss (title) signorina
mobile phone cellulare (m), telefonino

model indossatore (m), indossatrice (f)
modern moderno/a/i/e
moment momento
Monday lunedì (m)
money soldi (pl)
monkey scimmia
month mese (m)
more più

more ... than ... più... di/che...
morning mattina
this morning stamattina
mother madre (f)
motocross motocross (m)
motor racing automobilismo
motor scooter motorino
mountain montagna
mountain biking mountain biking
mountain climbing alpinismo

mouse topo
mouth bocca
to move forward avanzare
MP3 player lettore MP3
much molto, tanto
very much moltissimo/a/i/e, tantissimo/a/i/e

mum mamma
museum museo
mushroom fungo
music musica
classical music musica classica
electronic music musica elettronica
jazz music musica jazz
music artists artisti
music CD CD di musica
music festival festival di musica

pop music musica pop
rap music musica rap
musical instrument strumento
musician musicista (m/f)
my mio/a/ei/e

N

name nome (m)
national nazionale/i
natural gas benzina naturale
nature natura
near vicino, vicino a
near here qui vicino

neck collo
necklace collana
to need ... avere bisogno di...
nephew nipote (m)
nervous nervoso/a/i/e
netball netball (m)
Netherlands Paesi Bassi
never non... mai

never mind non importa
new nuovo/a/i/e
New Zealand Nuova Zelanda
New Zealander neozelandese/i
newspaper giornale (m)
next prossimo/a/i/e
next month mese (m) prossimo
next week settimana prossima

Nice (a city in France) Nizza
nickname soprannome (m)
niece nipote (f)
night notte (f)
nine nove

nineteen diciannove
ninety novanta
ninth nono/a/i/e
noise rumore (m)
north nord (m)
nose naso
not non
not anyone non... nessuno
not at all non... per niente
not too bad non c'è male
not yet non... ancora
nothing niente, non... niente
nougat torrone (m)
nougat-flavoured al torrone (m)
November novembre
now adesso
number numero
my phone number is ... il mio numero di telefono è...
nurse infermiera (f), infermiere (m)

O

obviously ovviamente
October ottobre
of course! senz'altro!, come no!, e già!
of course not! macché!
often spesso
oh my gosh! mamma mia!
OK va bene
old vecchio/ia/i/ie
older maggiore/i
older brother fratello maggiore
olive oliva
Olympics giochi olimpici
on su
on foot a piedi
on the corner all'angolo
on the other hand invece

one uno
one hundred cento
only solo
only (if) soltanto (se)
to open aprire
opening apertura
opposite di fronte (a)
or o, oppure
orange arancione/i (colour)
orange (soft) drink aranciata
orange juice succo d'arancia
organised organizzato/a/i/e
ouch! ah!
our nostro/a/i/e
outdoors all'aperto
owner padrona

P

packet pacchetto
to paint dipingere
papier-mâché cartapesta
parachuting paracadutismo
paragliding parapendio
parent genitore (m)
park parco
parrot pappagallo

part parte (f)
is part of fa parte di
party festa
password password (f)
pastime passatempo
patient paziente/i
paw zampa
peach pesca
people persone (pl)
per cent per cento
perfect perfetto/a/i/e
perfume profumo
perfume shop profumeria
petroleum petrolio
pharmacy farmacia
philosophy filosofia
photo(s) foto (f, sing/pl)
photographic camera macchina fotografica
physical education educazione (f) fisica
physics fisica
piano pianoforte (m)
pilot pilota (m/f)
pink rosa (inv)
pistachio pistacchio
pizza restaurant pizzeria
place posto
plane aereo
plate piatto
to play giocare (a); suonare
player giocatore (m), giocatrice (f)
please per favore
pleased to meet you piacere
plumber idraulica (f), idraulico (m)
podcast podcast (m)

poor povero/a/i/e
poor thing(s)! poverino/a/i/e!
Pope Papa (m)
popular popolare/i, seguito/a/i/e

Portugal Portogallo
post office ufficio postale
potato patata
to prefer preferire
to prepare preparare
to prepare oneself prepararsi
to pretend fare finta
price prezzo
primary school teacher maestra (f), maestro (m)
problem problema (m)
project progetto
protagonist protagonista (m/f)
to protect difendere
psychologist psicologa (f), psicologo (m)
to pull tirare
purple viola (inv)
to put mettere
to put on oneself mettersi

Q

quay riva
quick svelto/a/i/e
quiet silenzioso/a/i/e, tranquillo/a/i/e

R

rabbit coniglio
racquet racchetta
to rain piovere
rarely raramente
to read leggere
really proprio, veramente, davvero
recess intervallo, ricreazione (f)
recipe ricetta
to recycle riciclare
red rosso/a/i/e
regards (in an email) saluti
region regione (f)
regularly regolarmente
religion religione (f)
to remain rimanere
to remember ricordarsi
residence residenza
to respond rispondere
responsibility responsabilità
to rest riposarsi
restaurant ristorante (m)
to return ritornare, tornare
rhythm ritmo
right destra
to the right a destra
ringtone suoneria
risk rischio
river fiume (m)
road strada
robust robusto/a/i/e
rock climbing arrampicata
rock music musica rock
rocket (leaf vegetable) rucola
rodent roditore (m)
Roman romano
romantic romantico/a/i/he
Rome Roma
round rotondo/a/i/e
rugby rugby (m)
ruin rovina
to run correre
to run away scappare

S

safe salvo/a/i/e
sailing vela
same stesso/a/i/e
Samoa Samoa
Samoan samoano/a/i/e
Saturday sabato
sauce (pasta sauce) sugo
sausage salsiccia
to save salvare
saxophone sassofono
to say dire
to say hello salutare
scarf sciarpa
scene scena
schedule orario
school scuola
science scienze (pl)
science high school liceo scientifico
to score segnare

sculptor scultore (m)
sea mare (m)
to search cercare
season stagione (f)
second secondo/a/i/e
second (time) secondo
secure sicuro/a/i/e
to see vedere
to see again rivedere
to see each other again rivedersi
to see oneself vedersi
see you ci vediamo
see you later a dopo, a più tardi
see you soon a presto
to seem sembrare
to sell vendere
to send inviare, mandare
to send a SMS to ... mandare un SMS a...
September settembre
serious serio/a/i/e
seven sette
seventeen diciassette
seventh settimo/a/i/e
she lei
she's cute! che bella!
shield scudo
to shine splendere
ship nave (f)
shoe scarpa
shoe shop negozio di scarpe
training/running shoes scarpe di ginnastica
shop negozio
shop assistant commessa (f), commesso (m)
sporting goods shop negozio di articoli sportivi
souvenir shop negozio di souvenir
stationery shop cartoleria
toy shop negozio di giocattoli
shopping spesa, shopping
shopkeeper commerciante (m/f)
short basso/a/i/e; corto/a/i/e
shoulder spalla
to shout urlare
to show mostrare
shy timido/a/i/e
to sing cantare
singer cantante (m/f)
sir, Mr (title) signore (m)
sister sorella
six sei
sixteen sedici
sixth sesto/a/i/e
sixty sessanta
skateboard skateboard (m)
skeleton scheletro
to ski sciare
ski slope pista
skiing sci (m, sing)
skirt gonna

sky blue azzurro/a/i/e
to sleep dormire
slice fetta
slice of bread fetta di pane
slide scivolone (m)
slim magro/a/i/e
small piccolo/a/i/e
SMS SMS (m)
snake serpente (m)
so perciò, dunque
soccer calcio
soccer player calciatore (m)
softly piano
something qualcosa
sometimes qualche volta
son figlio
song canzone (f)
soon fra poco; presto
sore dolorante/i
sorry scusa (informal), scusi (formal)
I'm sorry mi dispiace
so-so così, così
South Africa Sudafrica (m)
South African sudafricano/a/i/e
spaghetti spaghetti (pl)
Spain Spagna
Spanish spagnolo/a/i/e
to speak parlare
special speciale/i
to spend spendere
to spend time passare
splendid splendido/a/i/e, stupendo/a/i/e
sporting ground campo (sportivo)
sporty sportivo/a/i/e
spring primavera
squirrel scoiattolo
stadium stadio
staircase scala
station stazione (f)
statue statua
to stay stare
steak bistecca
stepbrother fratellastro
stepfather patrigno
stepmother matrigna
stepsister sorellastra
still ancora; fermo/a/i/e
stomach stomaco
stomach-ache mal di stomaco
to stop fermare, smettere
stop it! smettila!
straight liscio/ia/i/e; dritto
straight away subito
straight ahead sempre dritto
strange strano/a/i/e
strawberry fragola
strawberry-flavoured alla fragola
strict severo/a/i/e
strong forte/i
student studente (m), studentessa (f)

to study studiare
study studio
subject materia; oggetto (of an email)
Sudan Sudan (m)
Sudanese sudanese/i
sugar zucchero
summer estate (f)
Sunday domenica
sunglasses occhiali da sole
supermarket supermercato
to surf the Internet navigare su Internet
surfing surf (m)
surname cognome (m)
survey ricerca
Sweden Svezia
sweet dolce/i
to swim nuotare
swim suit costume (m) da bagno
swimmer nuotatore (m), nuotatrice (f)
swimming nuoto
swimming pool piscina
Swiss svizzero/a/i/e
to switch off spegnere
Switzerland Svizzera

T

table tavolo
tail coda
to take prendere
take-away shop rosticceria
to take care fare attenzione
tall alto/a/i/e
tea tè (m)
to teach insegnare
teacher prof (m/f), insegnante (m/f)
team squadra
television televisione (f)
television drama teledramma (m)
to telephone someone telefonare (a)
to tell dire
tell me mi dica (formal), dimmi (informal)
ten dieci
tennis tennis (m)
tenth decimo/a/i/e
thank you grazie
thank you for everything grazie di tutto
thank you very much! mille grazie!
that quello/a/i/e
the il, lo, la, l'; i, gli, le
their loro
them li, le
then allora
there là; ci
there is/are c'è/ci sono
there was c'era
there's no need non c'è bisogno
thing cosa
to think pensare

third terzo/a/i/e
thirteen tredici
thirty trenta
this questo/a/i/e
three tre
to throw gettare
thumb pollice (m)
thunderstorm temporale (m)
Thursday giovedì (m)
ticket biglietto
ticket office biglietteria
one-way ticket biglietto di corsa semplice
time tempo; volta (occasion); ora (by clock)
timetable orario
tired stanco/a/hi/he
to a (city, village, suburb, landmark, or building); in (states/territories, regions, countries or continents)
today oggi
together insieme
toilet gabinetto
tomorrow domani
tonight stasera
too troppo
too much troppo
tooth dente (m)
toothache mal di denti
tour giro
Tour of Italy Giro d'Italia
tourist turista (m/f)
town square piazza
tracksuit tuta sportiva
traffic traffico
traffic lights semaforo
traffic policeman vigile (m)
train treno
training allenamento
trampoline pedana elastica
to travel viaggiare
tree albero
true vero/a/i/e
trumpet tromba
truth verità
to try provare (a + inf), cercare (di + inf)
T-shirt maglietta
Tuesday martedì (m)
to turn girare
turntable piatti (pl)
turtle tartaruga
TV/radio presenter presentatore (m), presentatrice (f)
twelve dodici
twenty venti
twenty-eight ventotto
twenty-five venticinque
twenty-four ventiquattro
twenty-nine ventinove
twenty-one ventuno
twenty-seven ventisette
twenty-six ventisei
twenty-three ventitré
twenty-two ventidue
two due

U

umbrella ombrello
umpire arbitro
uncle zio
to understand capire
to undress oneself spogliarsi
unfortunately purtroppo
uniform divisa
unique unico/a/i/he
United Kingdom Regno Unito
unpleasant antipatico/a/i/he
until fino (a)
until tomorrow fino a domani
to upload fare l'upload, caricare
us noi, ci, -ci (suffix)
to use usare
useful utile/i
useless inutile/i
username nome utente (m)
usually di solito

V

vanilla vaniglia
vanilla-flavoured alla vaniglia
vase vaso
vegetable verdura
vegetarian vegetariano/a/i/e
Venetian mask maschera veneziana
Venice Venezia
very molto
veterinarian veterinaria (f), veterinario (m)
video game videogioco
Vietnam Vietnam (m)
Vietnamese vietnamita (m/f)
violin violino
violinist violinista (m/f)
to visit visitare
volcano vulcano
volleyball pallavolo (f)

W

to wait aspettare
waiter cameriere (m)
waitress cameriera (f)
to walk camminare
walk (stroll) passeggiata
to go for a walk fare una passeggiata
to wake up svegliarsi
wallet portafoglio
to want volere
to wash lavare
to wash oneself lavarsi
watch out! stai attento/a! / state attenti/e!
water acqua
water-bus vaporetto
wave onda
wavy ondulato/a/i/e
to wear portare
weather tempo

weather forecast previsioni (f, pl) del tempo
web address indirizzo
web page pagina web
website sito web
Wednesday mercoledì (m)
week settimana
welcome benvenuto/a/i/e
well ... (expression) beh...
well bene
well done! bravo!
well then quindi
very well benissimo
westerly occidentale/i
what che; che cosa, cosa
what a crowd! che folla!
what a shame che peccato
what are you doing? cosa fai?
what do you mean! che cosa dici!
what film do you want to see? che film vuoi vedere?
what fun! bel divertimento!
what happened? cos'è successo?
what is/what are? che cos'è/che cosa sono?
what is the problem? qual è il problema?
what is your phone number? qual è il tuo numero di telefono?
what ... of/about? di cosa...?
what time is it? che ore sono?
what will you be when you grow up? cosa farai da grande?
what's the date? che giorno è?
what's the weather like? che tempo fa?
when quando
where dove
where are dove sono
where is dov'è
where is/where can you find ...? dove si trova...?
which quale/quali
which is/which are? qual è/quali sono?
while mentre
whisker baffo
white bianco/a/hi/he
who chi
who is speaking? chi parla?
why? perché?
to win vincere
winner vincitore (m), vincitrice (f)
window finestra

windsurfing windsurf (m)
wing ala
winter inverno
with con
with great care con grande cura
within one hundred metres a cento metri
woman donna
wonderful meraviglioso/a/i/e
work lavoro
to work lavorare, funzionare
to work out allenarsi
world mondo
World Cup coppa del mondo
worse peggiore/i
(the) worst il/la peggiore, i/le peggiori
to worry preoccuparsi
don't worry non preoccuparti
to write scrivere
write soon scrivimi presto
writer scrittore (m), scrittrice (f)

Y

year anno
yellow giallo/a/i/e
yesterday ieri
yoghurt yogurt (m)
you Lei (formal); tu (informal, singular); voi (plural)
you can do it! dai che ce la fai!
you need a lifetime ci vuole una vita
you're crazy! sei pazzo/a!
you're early sei in anticipo
you're great! sei forte!
you're joking! scherzi!
you're welcome prego
young giovane/i
your suo/a/oi/e (formal); tuo/a/oi/e (informal, singular); vostro/a/i/e (plural)
yum, yum! gnam, gnam!

Z

zero zero
zodiac sign segno zodiacale

